



DS AUTOMOBILES

DS 7 CROSSBACK

HANDBOOK



Download on the
App Store

GET IT ON
Google Play

Access to the Handbook



MOBILE APPLICATION

Install the **Scan MyDS** application (content available offline).



Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.



ONLINE

Visit the **DS AUTOMOBILES** website and select the '**MyDS**' section to view or download the handbook or go to the following address:

<http://service.dsautomobiles.com>



Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

WELCOME

Thank you for choosing a DS 7 CROSSBACK or a DS 7 CROSSBACK E-TENSE.

This document presents the key information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with this document and the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.

The **DS AUTOMOBILES** brand is marketed by Automobiles CITROËN, a public limited company with capital of €159,000,000, the headquarters of which is at 7 rue Henri Sainte-Claire Deville, 92500 Rueil-Malmaison, France, registered with the Nanterre Trade and Companies Register under no. 642 050199, hereafter referred to as the "Manufacturer", which reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Environmental protection feature



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

Overview

Eco-driving

01 Instruments

- 9 Instrument panels
- 12 Warning and indicator lamps
- 18 Indicators
- 21 Manual test
- 21 Total distance recorder
- 22 Lighting dimmer
- 22 Trip computer
- 23 Clock
- 23 Touch screen
- 26 Remote features (Hybrid)

02 Access

- 27 Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,
- 28 Keyless Entry and Starting
- 30 Central locking
- 31 Back-up procedures
- 33 Doors
- 33 Boot
- 34 Hands-free tailgate
- 37 Alarm
- 39 Electric windows
- 40 Panoramic sunroof

03 Ease of use and comfort

- 42 Driving position
- 43 Front seats
- 47 Steering wheel adjustment
- 47 Mirrors

- 49 Rear seats
- 51 DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function
- 51 Heating and Ventilation
- 53 Manual air conditioning
- 54 Dual-zone automatic air conditioning
- 57 Front demist - defrost
- 57 Rear screen demist - defrost
- 57 Heated windscreen
- 58 Additional heating/ventilation system
- 59 Thermal pre-conditioning (Hybrid)
- 60 Front fittings
- 64 Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps
- 64 Interior ambience lighting
- 65 Rear fittings
- 65 Boot fittings

04 Lighting and visibility

- 68 Exterior lighting control stalk
- 69 Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps
- 70 Direction indicators
- 70 Automatic illumination of headlamps
- 70 Guide-me-home and welcome lighting
- 71 DS NIGHT VISION
- 72 Automatic headlamp dipping
- 74 Adaptive Front System (AFS)
- 75 Dynamic bend lighting
- 76 Headlamp adjustment
- 76 Wiper control stalk
- 78 Changing a wiper blade
- 79 Automatic wipers

05 Safety

- 80 General safety recommendations
- 80 Hazard warning lamps
- 81 Horn

- 81 Pedestrian horn (Hybrid)
- 81 Emergency or assistance call
- 83 Electronic stability control (ESC)
- 85 Advanced Traction Control
- 86 Seat belts
- 88 Airbags
- 90 Child seats
- 92 Deactivating the front passenger airbag
- 95 ISOFIX child seats
- 99 i-Size child seats
- 99 Child lock

06 Driving

- 101 Driving recommendations
- 102 Anti-theft protection
- 102 Starting/Switching off the engine
- 103 Starting hybrid vehicles
- 104 Electric parking brake
- 107 Manual gearbox
- 107 Automatic gearbox
- 110 e-EAT8 electric automatic gearbox (Hybrid)
- 111 DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION
- 111 Driving modes
- 113 Hill start assist
- 114 Gear efficiency indicator
- 114 Stop & Start
- 116 Tyre under-inflation detection
- 117 DS ConnectedCAM
- 118 Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations
- 119 Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation
- 122 Speed limiter
- 123 Cruise control - particular recommendations
- 124 Programmable cruise control
- 125 DS DRIVE ASSIST

- 125 Adaptive Cruise Control
- 129 Active Lane Keeping Assist
- 133 Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance
- 135 Distraction detection
- 136 Lane Departure Warning System
- 137 Active Lane Departure Warning System
- 140 Blind Spot Detection
- 142 Active Blind Spot Detection
- 142 Parking sensors
- 144 Reversing camera - 360 Vision
- 148 Park Assist
- 150 DS PARK PILOT

07 Practical information

- 156 Compatibility of fuels
- 156 Refuelling
- 157 Misfuel prevention (Diesel)
- 157 Hybrid system
- 161 Charging the traction battery (Hybrid)
- 163 Towing device
- 165 Energy economy mode
- 165 Very cold climate screen
- 166 Snow chains
- 166 Roof bars
- 167 Bonnet
- 168 Engine compartment
- 169 Checking levels
- 171 Checks
- 172 AdBlue® (BlueHDi)
- 174 Free-wheeling
- 175 Advice on care and maintenance

08 In the event of a breakdown

- 177 Warning triangle
- 177 Running out of fuel (Diesel)
- 178 Tool kit
- 179 Temporary puncture repair kit
- 181 Spare wheel
- 185 Changing a bulb
- 188 Changing a fuse
- 190 12 V battery
- 193 Accessory batteries (Hybrid)
- 195 Towing the vehicle

09 Technical data

- 198 Engine technical data and towed loads
- 199 Petrol engines
- 201 Diesel engines
- 203 Hybrid engines
- 204 Dimensions
- 204 Identification markings

10 DS CONNECT RADIO

- 205 First steps
- 206 Steering mounted controls
- 207 Menus
- 208 Applications
- 208 Radio
- 210 DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio
- 210 Media
- 211 Telephone
- 215 Settings
- 216 Frequently asked questions

11 DS CONNECT NAV

- 218 First steps
- 219 Steering mounted controls
- 219 Menus
- 221 Voice commands
- 224 Navigation
- 227 Connected navigation
- 229 Applications
- 232 Radio
- 233 DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio
- 234 Media
- 235 Telephone
- 238 Settings
- 240 Frequently asked questions

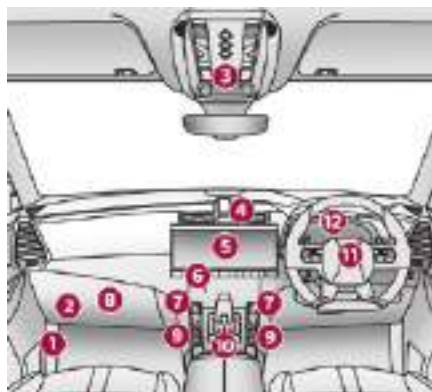
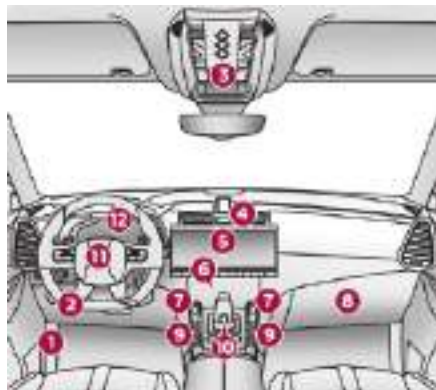
Alphabetical index

Access to additional videos



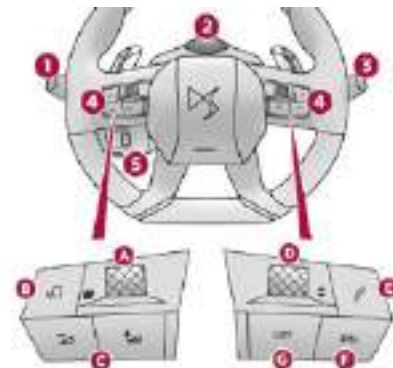
Instruments and controls

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of certain elements may vary, depending on the version or trim level.



1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Courtesy lamp
Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
Panoramic sunroof controls
Interior rear view mirror/driving indicator LED in **ELECTRIC** mode (Hybrid)
Emergency and assistance call buttons
Deactivation of the alarm's interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring
4. Starting/switching off the engine
Clock
5. Touch screen with DS CONNECT RADIO or DS CONNECT NAV
6. Wireless smartphone charger
12 V socket / USB socket
7. Electric parking brake
Select a driving mode
8. Glove box
Deactivate the front passenger airbag
9. Electric windows
Central locking
Electric child lock
10. Gearbox
11. Horn
Driver front airbag
12. Instrument panel

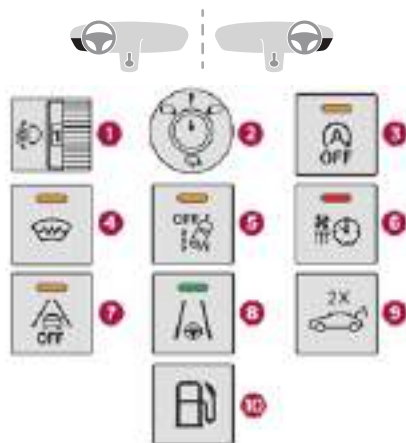
Steering mounted controls



1. External lighting controls / Direction indicators
2. Infra-red camera
3. Wiper controls / Screenwash / Trip computer

4. Audio system controls
 - A. Choice of instrument panel display mode
 - B. Voice commands
 - C. Decrease / increase volume
 - D. Select previous / next media
Confirm a selection
 - E. Access to the **Telephone** menu
Manage calls
 - F. Select an audio source
 - G. Display the list of radio stations / audio tracks
5. Cruise control / speed limiter controls

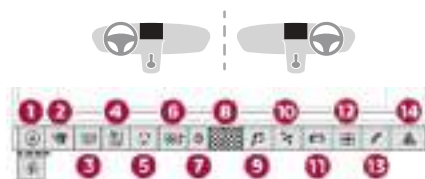
Side switch panel



1. Halogen headlamp beam height adjustment

2. Door mirrors adjustment
3. Stop & Start
4. Heated windscreen
5. Lane departure warning system
6. Programmable heating operation indicator lamp
7. Active lane departure warning system
8. Lane positioning assist
9. Opening / closing the hands-free tailgate
10. Opening the fuel filler flap (Hybrid)

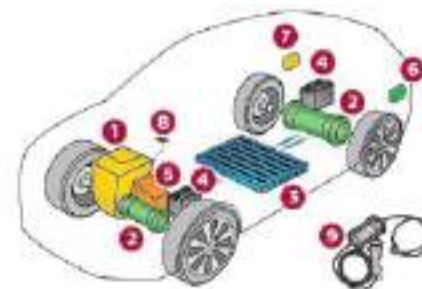
Central switch panel



1. Access to the **Hybrid** menu or to the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function (depending on version)
2. Automatic visibility programme
3. Rear screen demisting / defrosting
4. Ventilation off
5. Manual recirculation of the interior air
6. Access to the **Climate** menu
7. Audio system on/off
8. Volume adjustment
9. Access to the **Radio Media** menu
10. Access to the **Navigation** menu

11. Access to the **Driving** or **Vehicle** menu
12. Access to the **Applications** menu
13. Access to the **Telephone** menu
14. Hazard warning lamps

Rechargeable hybrid system



1. Petrol engine
2. Front and rear electric motors (depending on version)
3. Traction battery
4. 12 V accessory batteries
5. 8-speed electric automatic gearbox (e-EAT8)
6. Charging flap
7. Fuel filler flap
8. Driving mode selector
9. Charging cable

The **rechargeable hybrid** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of one or two electric motors (depending on version).

The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to the operating mode selected and the driving conditions.

Electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **ELECTRIC** mode, and in **HYBRID** mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during the phases of starting-up and acceleration.

Electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear: whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These attitudes help to save fuel, reduce CO₂ emissions and decrease general traffic noise.

Favour the use of the "Eco" driving mode by selecting it using the "Drive Mode" control. If the vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, use cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Use electrical equipment wisely

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically. Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to help reduce consumption of electrical energy, and hence fuel.

Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not overlook the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan. Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle will emit pollution; visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to regulatory compliance.

When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third nozzle cut-out, to avoid overflow.

You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Optimising the driving range (hybrid vehicles)

Connect the vehicle as soon as possible.

Favour the **ECO** zone of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Anticipate slowing down as much as possible and, if possible, favour decelerations with regenerative braking (power indicator in the **CHARGE** zone).

When GPS navigation is activated, select the **HYBRID** mode to optimise electric consumption.

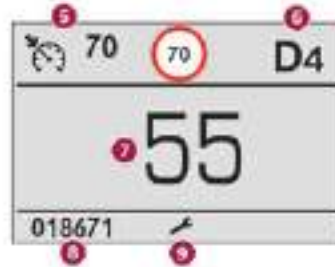
Matrix instrument panel



Dials

1. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Fuel gauge
3. Engine coolant temperature indicator (°C)
4. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

Central display



5. Status of cruise control / speed limiter
6. Gear shift indicator
Status of automatic gearbox
7. Customised display area
Alert messages
8. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
9. Service spanner

Selecting the type of information



To modify the type of information in the customised display area of the screen:

- Rotate the dial located to the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different types of information.

The new display is applied instantly.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the following types of information are available:

- Digital speedometer.
- Trip computer.
- Traffic sign recognition.
- Driving aids.
- Vigilance level.
- Reminder of navigation instructions.
- Dynamic vehicle parameters (Sport mode).

Digital instrument panel

This digital instrument panel can be customised. Depending on the display mode selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently. Example with the "PERSONAL" display mode:

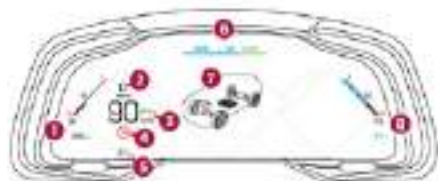


1. Fuel gauge
2. Trip computer

3. Gear shift indicator
Status of the automatic gearbox
Driving mode
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Cruise control / speed limiter settings
6. Display of speed limit signs
7. Status of the Lane positioning assist
8. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)
9. Engine coolant temperature indicator (°C)
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
11. Service spanner

Digital instrument panel (Hybrid)

This digital instrument panel can be customised. Depending on the display mode selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently. Example with the "ÉNERGIE" display mode:



1. Fuel gauge and remaining range (miles or km)
2. Status of the gearbox
Active driving mode

3. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
READY indicator lamp
4. Cruise control / speed limiter settings
Display of speed limit signs
5. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
6. Power indicator
7. Power flow
8. Battery charge level and remaining range
(miles or km)

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, the others can alter location.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:

- in fixed locations:
 - Fuel gauge.
 - Engine coolant temperature indicator.
 - Charge level and driving range indicator (Hybrid).
 - Total distance recorder.
- in variable locations:
 - Gearbox and gear shift indicator information.
 - Digital speedometer.
 - Power indicator (Hybrid).
 - Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and the active features, additional information may be displayed:

- Rev counter.
- Trip computer.
- Driving aid functions.
- Speed limiter or cruise control.
- Media currently playing.
- Navigation instructions.
- Engine information (G-meters, Power-meters, Boost, Torque) in Sport mode.
- DS NIGHT VISION function.
- Power flow (Hybrid).

Customising the instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel by choosing:

- a display colour.
- a display mode.

Display language and units

These depend on the touch screen settings.

When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).



As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour

The display colour can be selected in the setting of a profile in the **Settings** touch screen menu. It can also be related to the ambience activated by the DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function.

Depending on version, the possible choices are:

- “**Cashmere**”: purple,
- “**Titanium**”: crimson,
- “**Normal**” (no ambience activated): white and champagne.

For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Setting the display mode

In each mode, specific types of information are displayed on the instrument panel.

Changing the display mode



- ▶ Turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through

the various modes on the right-hand side of the instrument panel.

▶ Press the thumbwheel to confirm the mode. If you do not press the thumbwheel, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Display mode overview

- “**DIALS**”: standard display of analogue and digital speedometers, distance recorder and:
 - fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
 - fuel gauge, battery charge indicator and power indicator (Hybrid).
- “**NAVIGATION**”: standard display plus current navigation information (map and navigation instructions).
- “**DRIVING**”: standard display, plus information relating to active driving aid systems.
- “**MINIMAL**”: restricted display with digital speedometer, distance recorder and:
 - fuel gauge and engine coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
 - fuel gauge and battery charge indicator (Hybrid).
- “**NIGHT VISION**”: minimal display, plus the infrared camera image (associated with the DS NIGHT VISION function).
- “**ÉNERGIE**”: standard display plus a visual representation of the vehicle's energy flows (Hybrid).

- “**PERSONAL**”: minimal display, with the ability to select and display optional information in the customisable areas on the left and right.

Configuring a “PERSONAL” display mode

With DS CONNECT RADIO

- ▶ Press **Settings** in the upper banner of the touch screen.
- ▶ Select “**Configuration**”.



- ▶ Select “**Instrument panel personalisation**”.

With DS CONNECT NAV



- ▶ Press **Settings** in the side banner of the touch screen.
- ▶ Select “**OPTIONS**”.



- ▶ Select “**Instrument panel personalisation**”.

- ▶ For each customised display area (i.e. left and right), select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows on the touch screen:

- “**Driving aids**”.
- “**Default**” (empty).
- “**Engine info**” (Sport mode).
- “**G-metres**” (Sport mode).
- “**Temperatures**” (engine oil).
- “**Media**”.
- “**Navigation**”.
- “**Trip computer**”.
- “**Rev counter**”.
- “**Energy flow**” (depending on version).
- “**Power indicator**” (depending on version).

- **"Energy consumption"** (depending on version).
- **"Night vision"**.
- **"Vigilance level"**.

► Confirm to save and exit.

The **"PERSONAL"** display mode is enabled immediately.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp continuously lit

The illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates the occurrence of a fault that needs further investigation.

If a warning lamp remains lit

The references (1), (2) and (3) in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP



Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum engine coolant temperature



Fixed, with the needle in the red zone, accompanied by the STOP warning lamp.

The cooling system temperature is too high. Carry out (1), then allow the engine to cool before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Fixed, accompanied by the STOP warning lamp.

The cooling system temperature is too high. Carry out (1), then allow the engine to cool before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure



Fixed.

There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (Hybrid)



Fixed.

The rechargeable hybrid system is faulty. Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (Hybrid)



Fixed.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12 V battery charge*



Fixed.

The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.). Carry out (1).

If the electric parking brake is no longer working, immobilise the vehicle:

▶ With the manual gearbox, engage a gear.

▶ With the automatic gearbox, fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Braking



Fixed.

The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Fixed.

The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty. Carry out (1) and then (2).

Electric parking brake



Fixed.

The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.

Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P**.

Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Door(s) open



Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.

An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

A door or the boot is not properly closed.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel.

It is possible to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery of the remote control.

For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.

Carry out (2).



Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.

The servicing interval has been exceeded.

The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Braking



Fixed.

A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.

Carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.

* Depending on country of sale.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically re-enabled in the event of a control lever fault.

Carry out (2).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake

fault".

The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working. When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:

► Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp comes on on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
- With an automatic gearbox, select P, then place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)



Fixed.

The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.

If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- Start the engine.

► Use the control lever to apply the parking brake.

► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.

► Hold the control lever pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.

► Release the control lever.

► Depress and hold the brake pedal.

► Hold the control lever in the "Application" direction for 2 seconds.

► Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

 Fixed.

The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostic system (Petrol or Diesel)

 Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

You **must** carry out (2).

 Fixed.

The emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.

Carry out (3) quickly.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

 Flashing.

DSC/ASR regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

 Fixed.

The DSC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.

If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Hill start assist



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Anti roll-back system fault".

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Under-inflation

 Fixed.

The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.

Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.

Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service

warning lamp fixed.

The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty. Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Parking sensors



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Engine pre-heating (Diesel)



Temporarily on (up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.

When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:

- the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
- the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.

If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Airbags



Fixed.

One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.

Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.

In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is in the "OFF" position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Low fuel level



Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending

on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards zero.

When it first comes on, there remains

approximately 6 litres of fuel in the tank (reserve).

Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid)



Fixed.

Horn fault detected.

Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the touch screen (**Driving/ Vehicle** menu).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.

The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.



Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Lane Departure Warning System



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.

A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.

Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has a fault.

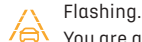
Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).

Active Lane Departure Warning System



Fixed.

The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Flashing.

You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Lane positioning assist



Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Stop & Start



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.

Press the button to reactivate Stop & Start.



Fixed.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.



Flashing then fixed, accompanied by a

message.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

AdBlue®(BlueHDi)



On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).

Top up the AdBlue®.



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).

Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).

You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the regulatory engine immobiliser prevents the engine from being restarted.

To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2).

You **must** add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

SCR emissions control system(BlueHDi)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied

by an audible signal and a message.

A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.

This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.



AdBlue® warning lamp flashing upon switching on

the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

Depending on the message displayed, it may be possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.

Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.



AdBlue® warning lamp flashing upon switching on

the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).

To start the engine, carry out (2).

Particle filter(Diesel)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle

filter blockage.

The particle filter is starting to saturate. As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

 Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low. The minimum level of the additive tank is reached. Quickly have the tank topped up: carry out (3)

Rear foglamps

 Fixed.
The lamps are on.

DS NIGHT VISION

 Fixed.
The system has been activated, but the vehicle is travelling too fast or the exterior temperature conditions are outside the operating range. The display is available with the "Night vision" mode but the system does not emit an alert.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Stop & Start(Petrol or Diesel)

 Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.
 Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

Vehicle ready to drive (Hybrid)

 Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.
The lamp will go out when you turn off the engine and exit the vehicle.

Eco mode

 Fixed.
ECO mode is active.
Certain parameters are adjusted with a view to reducing fuel consumption.

Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT

 Fixed.
The function is active.

Active Lane Keeping Assist

 Fixed.
The function has been activated.

All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.

Automatic wiping

 Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Direction indicators

 Direction indicators with audible signal.
 The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

 Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

 Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

 Fixed.
The front foglamps are lit.

DS NIGHT VISION

 Fixed.
The function has been activated.
All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.
The infrared camera image is available with the "Night vision" mode in the instrument panel.

Automatic headlamp dipping

 Fixed.
 The function has been activated via the touch screen (Driving / Vehicle menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

 Fixed.
The lamps are on.

eSave (Hybrid)

 Fixed, accompanied by the electric range saved.
The eSave function is activated.

Black/white warning lamps

Automatic gearbox (EAT8) or Electric automatic gearbox (e-EAT8) (Hybrid)



Fixed.

The automatic gearbox is locked.

You must press the **Unlock** button to unlock it.

Indicators

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (kilometres or miles) and time (months or days).

The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.

The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.



The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner



On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.



Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing



Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, combined with the Service warning lamp.)

The servicing interval has been exceeded.

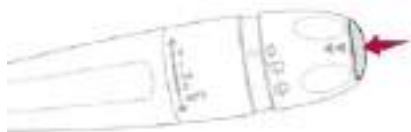
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.



- ▶ Press and hold the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk.

Switch on the ignition; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.

- ▶ When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.



If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the servicing information



You can view the servicing information by pressing the "**Check / Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds upon switching the ignition on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.



The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level incorrect

This is indicated by the display of a message prompting you to top up, accompanied by the

lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

This is indicated by the display of the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" on the instrument panel.

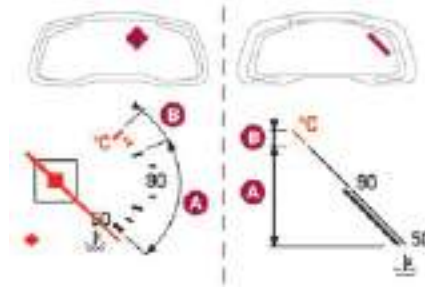
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Engine coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

- In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
- In zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the associated warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.

When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manually displaying the driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.

! You can view the range information by pressing the "**Check / Diagnostic**" button in the touch screen's **Driving / Vehicle** menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

 For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
	Top up.	Between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km)

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
 	A top-up is vital , there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 and 0 miles (100 and 0 km)
 	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

  	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and an "Emissions fault" message.
---	---

The alert is triggered while driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the cause of the fault persists.

 If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed. The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, and an "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles" message is displayed, indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine immobiliser** system is triggered.

 Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Starting prevented

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" message is displayed.

! To be able to restart the engine, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Power indicator (Hybrid)

The power indicator makes it possible to know in real time the power requested from the vehicle. There are 3 zones:



POWER High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor(s) (depending on version).

The cursor is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being requested.

ECO

Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).

The cursor is located in this zone during electric driving phases and during optimal usage phases of the petrol engine, accessible with suitable driving. An indicator indicates the restart threshold of the petrol engine. The driver can therefore moderate their acceleration to remain in electric driving mode.

CHARGE Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.

The cursor is located in this zone during deceleration phases: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

Charge level indicator (Hybrid)



The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.



With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.



It can be accessed via the "Diagnostic / Check" button in the Driving / Vehicle

touch screen menu.

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Engine oil level.
- Next service due.
- Tyre pressures.
- Driving range associated with the AdBlue and the SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel).
- Active alerts.



This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles): the road speed must be displayed in the local country's official unit (km/h or mph). The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With DS CONNECT RADIO

-  ► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
-  ► Select "**Brightness**".
-  ► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied immediately.

- Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

-  ► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
-  ► Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.

- Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With DS CONNECT NAV

-  ► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
- Select "**OPTIONS**".
-  ► Select "**Screen configuration**".
- Select the "**Brightness**" tab.
-  ► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.
- OK** ► Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

-  ► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
-  ► Select "**Turn off screen**".

The screen goes off completely.

- Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

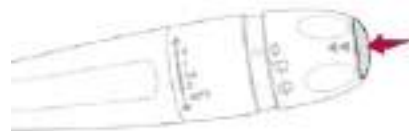
Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of data in the instrument panel

Trip computer data is displayed permanently when the "TRIP COMPUTER" or "PERSONAL" display mode is selected, depending on version.

In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk causes this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.

Display of the different tabs



- Press this button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the different tabs in turn:

- Current information:
 - Total range (petrol or Diesel).
 - Total range (petrol or Diesel).
 - Stop & Start time counter (petrol or Diesel).
 - Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (Hybrid).
- Trips "1" then "2":
 - Average speed.
 - Average fuel consumption.
 - Distance travelled.

Trip reset

-  ► When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds. Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)

 Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in driving style or relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed while driving, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

 Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

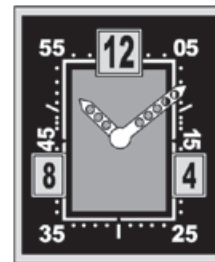
Stop & Start time counter

 (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is equipped with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Clock



It is deployed automatically when the ignition is switched on and folds back automatically when the ignition is switched off.

The hands mechanism is synchronised with the time displayed on the touch screen.

 Do not fold the clock back manually - it may break!

Touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).

- Heating/air conditioning controls.
- Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
- Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
- Internet services and display of related information.
- Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

! For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

► Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".

-  Settings for a function
-  Access to additional information on the function
- OK** Confirm
-  Return to the previous page or confirm

Menu



i Press with three fingers on the touch screen to show all menu buttons.

 **Radio / Media**
See "Audio and telematics" section..

 **Climate**
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic dual-zone air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

 **Connected Navigation***
See "Audio and telematics" section.

 **Driving or Vehicle****
Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

The functions are organised in 2 tabs : "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

* The TomTom Traffic logo displayed on the map confirms the availability of connected navigation services. For more information, refer to the connected navigation section.

** Depending on equipment.



Telephone

See "Audio and telematics" section..



Applications

Display of available connected services and direct access to certain equipment of the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.

For the other functions, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function

Personalisation of the driving ambience.

For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function**, refer to the corresponding section.



Hybrid

Access to the hybrid system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charge, eSave function).

For more information on **Charging the battery (Hybrid)**, refer to the corresponding section.



Volume adjustment/mute.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Audio system on/off.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Information banner(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the touch screen banner(s).

Upper banner of DS CONNECT RADIO

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).

- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the **RadioMedia** and **Telephone** menus information.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

Side banners of DS CONNECT NAV

- Exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).
- Notifications.
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Access to the heated/ventilated seat settings.
- Time.

Hybrid menu

Energy flow

The **Flow** tab presents the operation of the rechargeable hybrid system in real time.



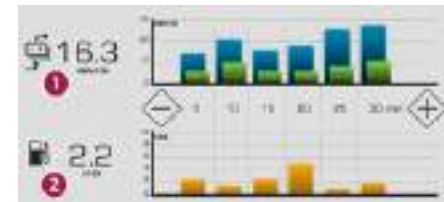
1. Active driving mode
2. Petrol engine
3. Electric motor(s)
4. Traction battery charge level

Energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:

- Blue: 100% electric power.
- Orange: power from the petrol engine.
- Green: energy recovery.

Consumption statistics

The **Statistics** tab shows electrical energy and fuel consumption statistics.



1. Average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values:
 - Blue bar chart: directly consumed energy supplied by the traction battery.

– Green bar chart: energy recovered during deceleration and braking, used to recharge the battery.

2. Average fuel consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values (orange bar chart).

► You can change the displayed time scale by pressing the - or + buttons.

eSave function

The **eSave** tab makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery for later use during a journey (e.g. driving in an urban area or in an area reserved for electric vehicles).

► Activate the function by choosing **ON** then select the electrical energy to be reserved: **10 km**, **20 km** or all of the electrical energy (**MAX**).



Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting up of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and the display of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

► To use the energy reserve, choose the **ELECTRIC** driving mode in the mode selector. The function settings are not saved when the ignition is switched off.



If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to ensure that the traction battery is recharged to the requested threshold - risk of downgraded performance and overconsumption of fuel!

Remote features (Hybrid)



These features are accessible using a smartphone, via the **MyDS** application:

- Battery charge management.
- Programmed heating management.
- Consumption, charge status and driving range statistics.

Installation procedure

- Download the **MyDS** app from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.
- Create your user account.
- Enter your vehicle's VIN number (code beginning with "VF" on the vehicle registration document).

For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.



Network coverage

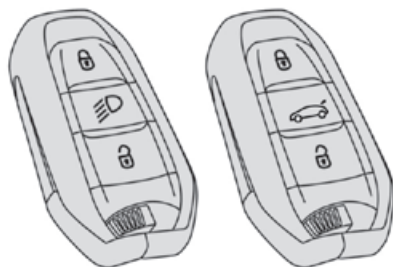
In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.

A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message

indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

Remote control function



The remote control can be used for the following remote functions, depending on version:

- Unlocking / Locking / Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Unlocking - Opening / Closing the boot.
- Remote operation of lighting.
- Folding / Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Activating / Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Opening / Closing the windows.
- Closing the sunroof.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

Integral key

The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:

- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



- To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Unlocking the vehicle



The selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Complete unlocking

- Press the unlocking button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel/charging flap

- Press the unlocking button.
- **Press it again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Complete or selective unlocking and alarm deactivation is confirmed by flashing the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorised operation is activated.



- Press and hold this button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.

The doors and fuel filler flap remain locked.

i If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

i If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button releases the tailgate.

To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

- Press the locking button.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

i An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle has an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked and there is no action at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle has an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

- Press the locking button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. The horn remains operational.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows and sunroof

+3s Maintaining pressure on the locking button for more than three seconds allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position. This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.

If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and / or sunroof partly open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection.

For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:

- The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
- The door mirror spotlamps come on.
- The courtesy lamps come on.



- Press this button.

Remote lighting of the lamps

Availability of this function depends on version.

- Press this button. The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.



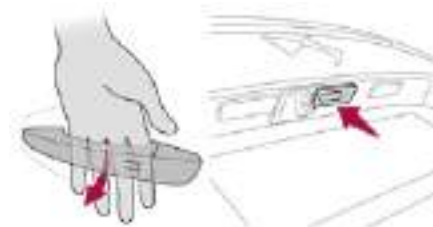
Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

Keyless Entry and Starting



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**.

Unlocking the vehicle





The selective unlocking settings (driver's door, boot) are made in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Complete unlocking

► Pass your hand behind the handle of one of the four doors or press the tailgate opening control. If the motorised tailgate opening control is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate opening control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel/charging flap

► Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
► To unlock the vehicle completely, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the passenger doors with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Complete or selective unlocking, and deactivation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

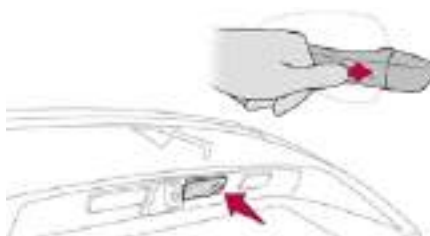
► Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the boot.
The doors remain locked.



If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



► Press the handle on one of the four doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.



Make sure that no item or person could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators. Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

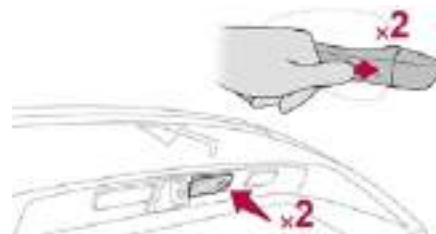


For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.

Deadlocking



Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- Press the handle on one of the four doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate to lock the vehicle.
- Press it again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.

However, if the vehicle has an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

i If the vehicle is unlocked and there is no action at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle has an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

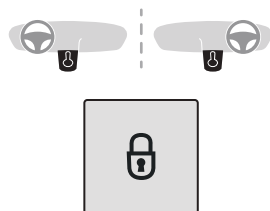
i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the key is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

! To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader. For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Starting system, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Electrical interference**
The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices such as telephones (switched on or on standby) or laptop computers, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Central locking



Manual

- Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm central locking of the vehicle.

! The central locking does not take place if one of the doors is open.

i When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically when driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)). To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press this button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation appears.

i Transporting long or bulky objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle

exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and an alert will appear.

Advice

Remote control

The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle. Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.

Anti-theft protection

Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety precaution, take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate and your personal identification documents.

The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialise the remote control. Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ▶ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ▶ Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.

If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

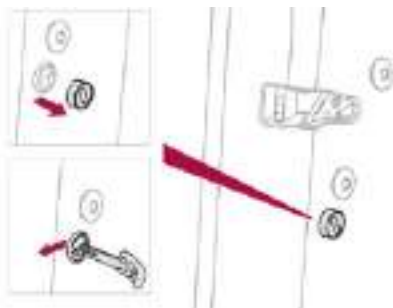
- ▶ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

Unlocking

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking



- Open the doors.
- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

- **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
- Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed in the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery ref.: CR2032/3 Volts.



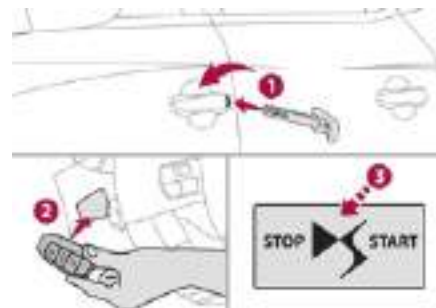
- Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
- Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

e Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
 - Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
 - Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
 - **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
 - **With an automatic gearbox**, while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
- If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside

- ▶ After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside

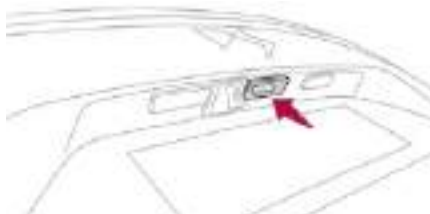
- ▶ Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i When selective unlocking is activated:

- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked),
- opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Boot

Opening the tailgate



- ▶ With the vehicle unlocked or with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ▶ Raise the tailgate.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

! The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- ▶ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- ▶ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing

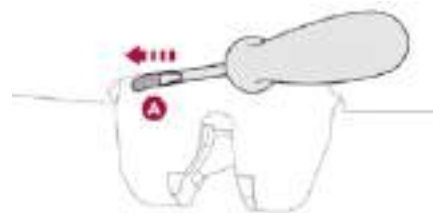
the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- ▶ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



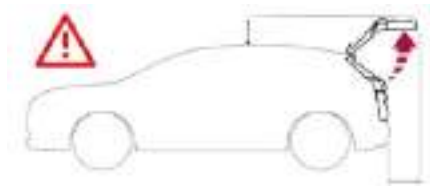
- ▶ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- ▶ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Hands-free tailgate

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate - risk of serious injury!

Anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees, to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle,
- monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier / Towbar

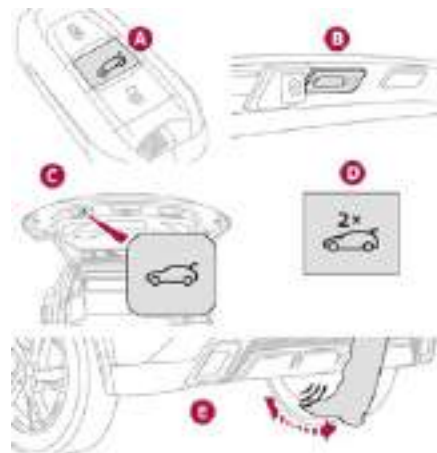
The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on a towbar with connection of a cable to the towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not recommended by the Manufacturer, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation

 Motorised operation of the tailgate is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- Using the Keyless Entry and Starting system electronic key.
- Using the exterior tailgate control.
- Using the interior tailgate control*.
- Using the control on the dashboard*.
- Using the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function below the rear bumper.

* Depending on version.

Opening / Closing

- ▶ Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.
 - or
 - ▶ Briefly press the exterior tailgate control **B**, with the electronic key on your person.
 - or
 - ▶ Briefly press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).
 - or
 - ▶ Press the control **D** on the dashboard twice in succession.
 - or
 - ▶ With the electronic key on your person, use the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper.
- For more information on the **Hands-free ("Hands-Free Tailgate Access")** function, refer to the corresponding section.

i The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.

If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate (partially-open position).

When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the boot with one of controls **A**, **B** or **E** unlocks the vehicle, or only the boot if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the boot.

Closing the tailgate with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function enables you to lock the vehicle.

i It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point.

Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway. Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.

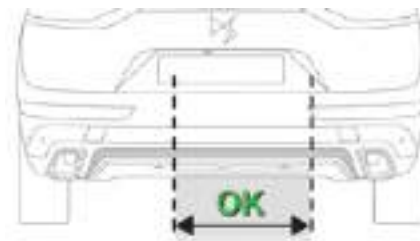
Hands-free function ("Hands-Free Tailgate Access")

With the electronic key on your person, this function opens, closes or stops the movement of the tailgate with a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper.

 The "Hands-Free Tailgate/Access" function is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.

Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - risk of burns!



- ▶ Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "kicking" movement in the "OK" detection zone.

! The detection zone is not centred with respect to the number plate.

The "kicking" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately. The taking into account of the "kicking" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.

! "Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement.
Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

If the tailgate has not started to open, check that:

- the function is activated.
- the electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.
- the "kicking" movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
- the foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

Automatic locking with the hands-free function



- To activate/deactivate the automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate with the hands-free function, press this button.

The green indicator lamp comes on to indicate that the function is activated.

Recommendations on the hands-free function ("Hands-Free Tailgate Access")

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).

The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:

- hitching up or removing a trailer;
- fitting or removing a bicycle carrier;
- loading or unloading bicycles on / from a bicycle carrier;
- depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle;
- an animal approaches the rear bumper;
- washing the vehicle;
- maintenance is performed on the vehicle;
- accessing the spare wheel.

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

! The installation of a towing device may disturb the detection system.

Memorising an opening position

To **memorise** a position, in order to limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

i Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the tailgate.

To **delete** the memorised position:

- open the tailgate to any position.
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (deletion is confirmed by a long audible signal).

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.

The tailgate must be stationary.

When opening and closing the motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

i Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised tailgate can cause overheating

of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Manual closing of the motorised tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure of the tailgate motor**.

If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed**.

In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

► Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the centre of the tailgate.

! Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!

Precautions in use

! To avoid unintentionally opening the tailgate while operating the towing device:

- Deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function in advance in the vehicle configuration menu.

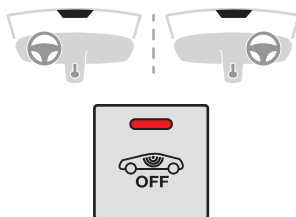
- Or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.
For more information on the **Towing device with retractable towball**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **In wintry conditions**
To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.

i **When washing**
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

Alarm

(Depending on version)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

i When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.

- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.



If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation



- Press the remote control unlocking button.

or

- Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.



If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Disable volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted alarm triggering in certain cases, such as:

- Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing your vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
- Get out of the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle immediately using the remote control or with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.



To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
- Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system. The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

- Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)

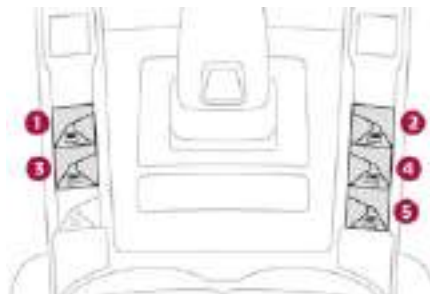
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Left-hand rear.
4. Right-hand rear.
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located at the rear seats.
Deactivation of the rear door opening controls (electric child lock)*.

Manual operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.
Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i Window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For children's safety, press switch **5** to deactivate the rear electric windows controls.

The indicator lamp for the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. With the ignition on, it remains lit, as long as the child lock remains activated.

* Depending on version.

Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

! For versions fitted with an electric child lock, this control also deactivates the interior rear door controls. For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- Continue to pull the control upwards for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant switch.

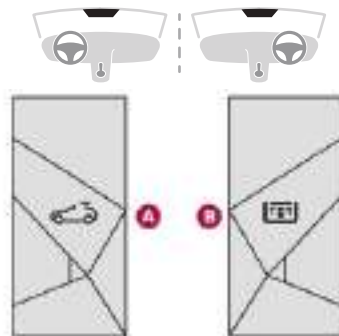
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window switches, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.

It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly. Pay particular attention to children when operating windows. Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows using the key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Panoramic sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

- To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof control
B. Sunroof blind control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof when driving - risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars does not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves, etc.).

If using a car wash, check that the roof is correctly closed in advance and keep the tip of the high-pressure lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

 Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. All intermediate positions are allowed.

 Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

 Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement. Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind. If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question. The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Opening / Closing

- ▶ To **open** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the **rear**.
- ▶ To **close** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the **front**.

Operation of buttons

- ▶ Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof fully.
- ▶ Pressing the button again stops the current movement.
- ▶ When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
- ▶ When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
- ▶ When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance opens or closes it fully.

 The roof and windows, then the blind, can be closed by holding down the door locking control. The operation stops as soon as the locking control is released.

 Closing of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the mobile glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically

stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the sunroof.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.

- ▶ Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
- ▶ With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.
- ▶ Press and hold the front part of button **A**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.
- ▶ Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **A**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

 If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

Driving position

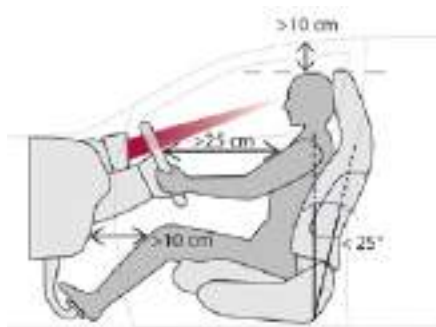
Adopting a good driving position helps improve your comfort and protection.

It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.

Sitting comfortably

Whether or not your vehicle has certain seat adjustments described in this section depends on the trim level and country of sale.

Driver's side



Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest. Adjust the seat cushion height so that your eyes are level with the centre of the windscreen. The head room (from the roof) should be at least 10 cm.

Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you can fully depress the pedals with legs slightly flexed.

The distance between your knees and the dashboard should be at least 10 cm, for easy access to the dashboard controls.

Adjust the backrest angle to as vertical a position as possible; never tilt it more than 25°.

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.

Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of your spine.

Adjust the steering wheel so that it is at least 25 cm from your sternum and you can hold it with your arms slightly bent.

The steering wheel should not hide the instrument panel.

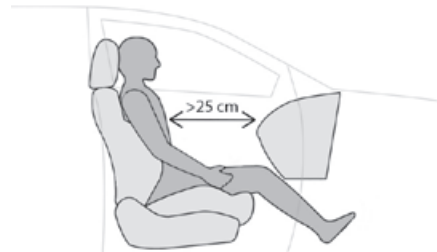


As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.



If your vehicle has electric seats, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

Passenger's side



Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.

Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Before moving off

Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.

Fasten your seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of your shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across your pelvis.

Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.



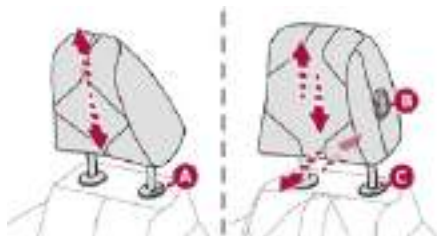
If your vehicle has electric door mirrors, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the 'quarter to three' position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

- ! Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving.
Always keep your feet on the floor.

Front head restraints



Height adjustment

- **Upward:** pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.
- **Downward:** depending on equipment, press lug **A** or button **B** and then, while still pressing, lower the head restraint.

- i The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Adjusting the angle

(Depending on equipment)

Forwards:

- move the lower part of the head restraint forwards.

Rearwards:

- press and hold button **B** and push the lower part of the head restraint rearwards.

Removing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Depending on equipment, press lug **A** or **C** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- If the vehicle is so equipped, press lug **A** or **C** to release the head restraint and push it down.
- Adjust the height of the head restraint.

- ! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Front seats

- ! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Manually-adjusted seats

Forwards-backwards



- Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- Release the bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

Height

- Pull the control upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it until the desired position is obtained.

Backrest angle

- Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

Electrically-adjustable seats

- To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

Longitudinal

- Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Backrest angle

- Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Cushion height and angle

- Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Additional adjustments

Electric lumbar adjustment



"2-way" adjustment

► Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.

"4-way" adjustment

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

► Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.

► Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Seat cushion length



► Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

Seat cushion angle

This electric adjustment control is present on 'AGR' certified manually-adjustable seats.



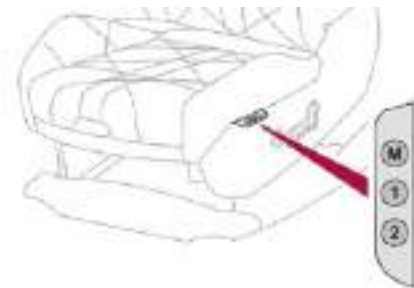
► Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front of the seat cushion.

Comfort functions

Memorising driving positions

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It takes account of the electric adjustments of the seat and the door mirrors.



Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation. Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal sounds when the adjustment is finished.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving. Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Welcome function

The welcome function assists entering and leaving the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forward to the stored driving position.

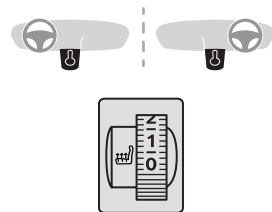
When the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

Heated seats

The function is active only with the engine running.

The type and location of the controls depend on the vehicle configuration.

Heated seats with DS CONNECT RADIO



The control knob is located in the central storage compartment.

- Turn the knob to switch on and select the adjustment level:
 - 0 = off.
 - 1 = low.
 - 2 = medium.
 - 3 = high.

Heated seats with DS CONNECT NAV

The control buttons are displayed in the side banners of the touch screen.

-  Press the button corresponding to your seat.
- Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on (low / medium / high).
- Press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Heated and ventilated seats with DS CONNECT NAV

The control buttons are displayed permanently in the side banners of the touch screen.



-  Press one of these buttons to display the heating and ventilation settings page for the front seats.

In the settings page:



- Press this button to activate the heating function of the corresponding seat.



- Press this button to activate the ventilation function of the corresponding seat.

- Each press of a button changes the level of heating or ventilation; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on (low / medium / high).
- To deactivate, press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.

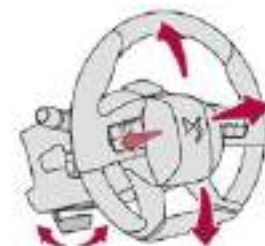
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

e Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electricity consumption in turn decreases fuel consumption.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ▶ When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- ▶ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ▶ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.

They can also be folded in for parking in narrow spaces.

! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Multipoint massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

The massage settings are adjusted in the touch screen.

The system is switched on, either directly using the button on the front seat, or by activating a personalised ambience with the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.

Using the button on the front seat:



- ▶ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The system is immediately activated with the last settings used and the settings page is displayed on the touch screen.

If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its original state.

! The multipoint massages are also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.

For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function**, refer to the corresponding section.

To modify the settings:

- ▶ Select another type of massage from the five offered.
- ▶ Select a massage intensity from the three levels offered: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).

The changes are applied immediately.

Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest.

The system automatically stops at the end of the cycle; the indicator lamp for the button goes off.

In versions fitted with "electrochrome" mirrors, a system connected to a brightness sensor darkens the mirror and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by low sun or headlamp beams from other vehicles.

Adjustment



- Turn control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return the control to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

Automatic: lock the vehicle using the electronic key.



Manual: with the ignition on, move control **A** downwards.



If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unfolding

Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key.



Manual: with the ignition on, move control **A** upwards.

The mirrors can be folded manually if necessary.



The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

Function which automatically tilts the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

- Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),

- When the engine is switched off.



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Demisting/Defrosting



If the vehicle is so equipped, demisting/defrosting of the heated door mirrors is performed when the heated rear screen is switched on.

For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position



- Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.

- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

- Set the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



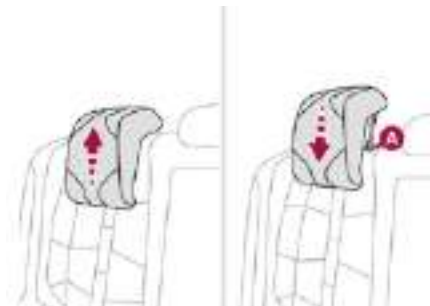
This system automatically and progressively transitions between day and night modes, using a sensor that measures the light entering from the rear of the vehicle.

- i** To ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed cushions and split folding and reclining backrests (2/3-1/3).

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
 - Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

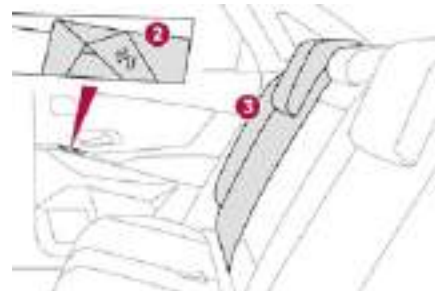
Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.

- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position. The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Backrest angle



- To bring the backrest **3** up or down, press control **2** or pull it to the desired position.

! When you adjust the backrest and the boot is loaded, check that nothing can hinder the backrest from moving. Risk of damaging the backrest.

Folding the backrests



Each section of the backrest has two release controls:

- a grip **1** on the outer edge of the backrest,
- a lever **2** on the boot side trim.

! Manoeuvring the seat backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

- Lower the head restraints.
- Lift up the rear armrest.
- If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- Check that no person or object will interfere with folding down the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.).
- Check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

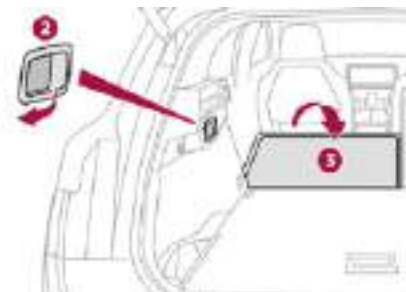
i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding cushion. To obtain a flat surface, it is necessary to place the adjustable boot floor in the high position. When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

Folding from the passenger compartment



- Press the backrest release grip **1**.
- Guide the backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

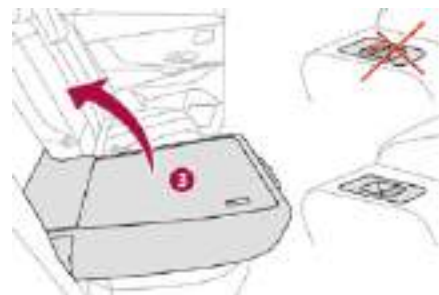
Folding from the boot



- Pull the backrest release lever **2** towards you. The backrest **3** folds fully onto the cushion.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ▶ Put the backrest **3** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ▶ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.
- ▶ Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

 Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - risk of serious injury!

DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function

This function allows the driving ambiances to be managed.

Specific system settings are offered for each ambience.

These ambiances can be customised in the touch screen.

Content of an ambience

An ambience is defined by the settings for each of the following systems:

 - the passenger compartment ambient lighting,

(brightness adjustment)

 - the audio ambience,

(choice of predetermined settings for the audio system equaliser)

 - multipoint massage,
(for each of the driver and passenger seats: activation / deactivation, choice of massage type and its intensity)

 - Driving mode,
(ECO, Comfort, Sport or Normal mode)

Accessing the DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function home page

-  **Direct access by this button**
or
 -  **Access via the Applications menu**
- ▶ Select "**DS SENSORIAL DRIVE**".

Activating an ambience

- ▶ Select an ambience: "**Cashmere**" or "**Titanium**".

Depending on the settings made for the ambience, the systems are immediately activated.

Deactivating an ambience

- ▶ Press on "**Deactivate ambience**".
or

- ▶ Select the other ambience.

The ambience is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Personalising an ambience

- ▶ Select the ambience to activate it.

- ▶ Press on "**Settings**" to display the settings page for the ambience.
- ▶ Select a system for which you wish to modify the settings.
- ▶ After making the modifications, press any area of the screen outside the system settings window to return to the ambience settings page.
- ▶ After making all the desired setting modifications, press on "**Save settings**". The modifications are immediately taken into account.

 It is possible to temporarily modify an ambience at any time, by modifying the settings for one or more of the systems managed in the ambience, without going via the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.
For example, it is possible to deactivate or modify the intensity of the current massage by pressing the massage activation button on the seat or activate / deactivate the passenger compartment ambience lighting from the **Driving / Vehicle** menu.
In this case, the new settings will not be saved as part of the current ambience.

Heating and Ventilation

Air intake

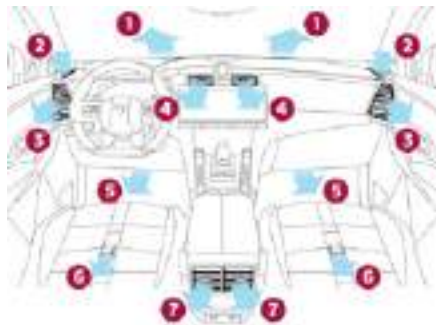
The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the

windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the "Air conditioning" touch screen menu or are grouped together in the control panel on the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells
7. Adjustable air vents with blower, depending on version

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.

► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.

► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.

► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

e If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long

time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

i Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, this type of filter helps to purify the air breathed by the occupants and keep the passenger compartment clean (by reducing allergic symptoms, unpleasant odours and greasy deposits).

► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

Stop & Start

i The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running.

Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on the **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning



 Press the **Climate** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic Visibility programme.
2. Air flow adjustment.
System switch-off.
3. Interior air recirculation.
4. Temperature adjustment.
5. Air distribution adjustment.
6. Air conditioning on/off.

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.

Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **4** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the temperature level.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the ventilation fan. The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased. When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.

Air distribution adjustment

► Press the buttons **5** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

-  Windscreen and side windows
-  Central and side air vents
-  Footwells

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction. It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button **1** "**Automatic Visibility Programme**", refer to the section "**Front Demisting/Defrosting**".

Air conditioning on / off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **6** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

i Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is disabled.

To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Switching the system off

► Press button **2**.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

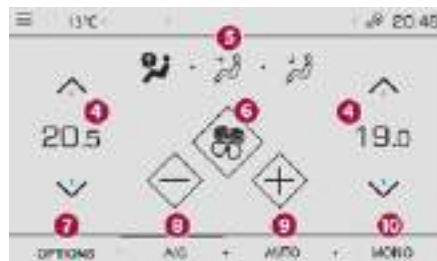
This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



 Press the **Climate** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic visibility programme
2. System switch-off
3. Recirculation of interior air
4. Temperature adjustment
5. Air distribution adjustment
6. Air flow adjustment
7. Access to the secondary page
8. Air conditioning on / off
9. Automatic comfort programme on / off
10. Mono-zone / Dual-zone
11. Selection of setting for the automatic comfort programme (Soft / Normal / Fast)
12. "AQS (Air Quality System)" function (depending on version)
13. Passenger compartment pre-conditioning (depending on version)
14. "REAR" function (depending on version)
15. Locking of the remote adjustment controls (depending on version)

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are regulated automatically.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

► Press one of the buttons **4** to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic Comfort programme

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

► Press button **9** to activate or deactivate the air conditioning system's automatic mode.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.

You can adjust the intensity of the automatic Comfort programme by using the **"OPTIONS"** button to select a profile:

- **"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
- **"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

– **"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow. To change the current profile (shown by the corresponding indicator lamp), press button **11** repeatedly until the desired profile is displayed: The **"Normal"** or **"Fast"** profiles are the most comfortable for passengers in the rear seats. This profile setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of the **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamp for the most recently selected profile remains on. Changing the profile setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if it was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button **1** "**Automatic Visibility Programme**", refer to the section "**Front Demisting/Defrosting**".

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air is detected. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5 °C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.

To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by using the **"OPTIONS"** button, then press button **12**.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more of these functions, while retaining automatic control of the other functions by the system:

- air flow,
- air distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes off.

► Press button **9** again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **6** (- or +) to decrease or increase the speed of the air booster fan. The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased. When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops. **"OFF"** is displayed alongside the fan.

Air distribution adjustment

► Press the buttons **5** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.



Windscreen and side windows



Central and side air vents



Footwells

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction. It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Air conditioning on / off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer;
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

- Press button **8** to activate / deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the system is activated, the indicator lamp of the button comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.

To obtain cool air more quickly, use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Mono-zone / Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).

- Press button **10** to activate the "**MONO**" function.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

"REAR" function

Activation of the function switches on the blower of the rear air vents.

- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
- Press button **14** to activate the "**REAR**" function; its status is displayed as "**ON**".

Remote controls

When this function is activated ("REAR" function activated and remote controls unlocked), the rear passengers can take control of the main air conditioning system settings using the control panel located at the rear of the centre console. The display of the settings is modified accordingly on the touch screen.



1. Air flow adjustment.
2. Automatic comfort programme.
3. Temperature adjustment.

Locking the remote controls

It is possible to block the rear passengers' access to these settings.

- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
- Press button **15** to lock the remote controls; the "**ON**" status is displayed.

A padlock appears on the rear air conditioning display.

Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow

settings and the air distribution in the passenger compartment, for a period which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

Switching the system off

- Press button **2**.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Interior air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.



- Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

i The function is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

Front demist - defrost

Automatic Visibility programme

This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



► Press this button to activate/deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp). The programme automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows. It is possible to manually change the air flow without deactivating the automatic Visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

! In wintry conditions, remove all snow or ice on the windscreen near the camera before moving off. Otherwise, the operation of the equipment associated with the camera may be affected.

Rear screen demist - defrost

Demisting/defrosting only operates with the engine running. Depending on version, this also applies to the door mirrors.



► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp). Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

e Switch off demisting/defrosting as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windscreen pillar.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps to prevent the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

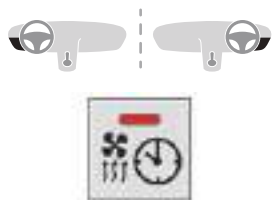
On/Off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).

The function is activated when the exterior temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

Additional heating/ventilation system



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.



This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.

It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.



If the engine has not been started for more than 3 days, the remote control starting of the system may not work.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

You can programme the heating or ventilation to come on using the second page of the "Air conditioning" menu on the touch screen.

With DS CONNECT NAV



► Press the "Air conditioning" menu.



► Press the "OPTIONS" tab.



► Press "Temperature programming".

► Press the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

► Press the "Parameters" tab to select "Heating" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" mode to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Then programme/preset the activation time for each selection.

► Press "OK" to confirm.

Long-range remote control

This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.

The remote control has a range of about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.



Switching on



► Press and hold this button to start the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in green for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

Switching off



► Press and hold this button to stop the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in red for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

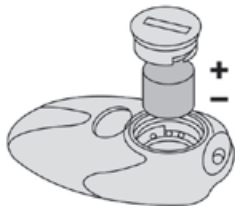


The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal.

You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

The indicator lamp in the remote control will change to orange if the battery charge is low. If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



- Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

e Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

i The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

i The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. The heating is activated provided that:

- the battery charge and the fuel level are sufficient,
- the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle,
- 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.



! The programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to program the heating. The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

! To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system. Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places. Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Thermal pre-conditioning (Hybrid)

This function allows you to programme the vehicle to adjust the passenger compartment temperature to a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and times of your choice.

Programming

(With DS CONNECT NAV)

In the **Climate** > **OPTIONS** menu:

 Select **Temperature conditioning**.

- Press **+** to programme.
- Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
- Press **ON** to activate this programming. Pre-conditioning begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time, and is maintained for 10 minutes afterwards.



This indicator lamp remains lit throughout the pre-conditioning phase.



You can define multiple programmings.

Each one is saved in the system.

To optimise battery life, we recommend programming with the vehicle plugged in.



This feature can be programmed using a smartphone, via the **MyDS** application.

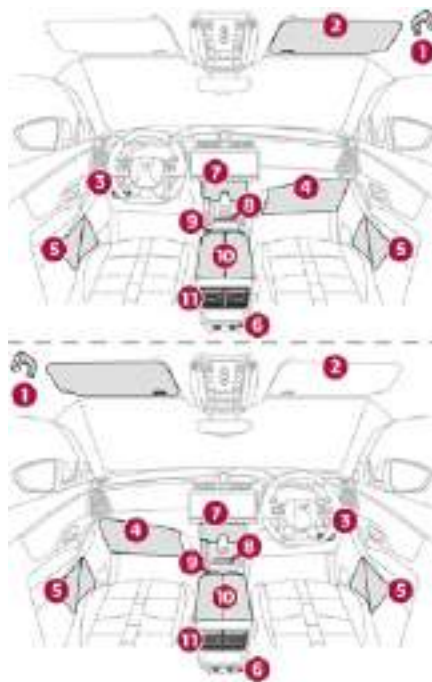
With DS CONNECT RADIO, the programming can only be carried out using a smartphone, via the application.

For more information on **Remotely operable features**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is off and the vehicle locked**.
- The function is not activated if the battery charge level is below 50%.
- If recurrent programming is activated (e.g. from Monday to Friday) and two pre-conditioning sequences are performed without the vehicle being used, the programming will be deactivated.

Front fittings



1. Grab handle
2. Sun visor
3. Storage compartment below the steering wheel

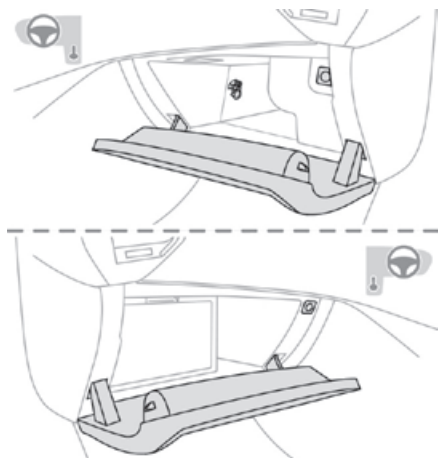
4. Illuminated glove box
5. Door pockets
6. USB sockets
7. Storage compartments or Wireless smartphone charger
12 V accessory socket (120 W)
8. Storage compartment
9. Cup holder
10. Front armrest with storage
11. Storage compartment or Rear blower

Sun visor

- With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

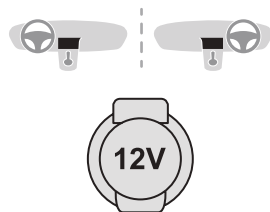
- To open the glove box, raise the handle. With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open. Depending on version, it contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.



It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cigarette lighter / 12 V accessory socket(s)



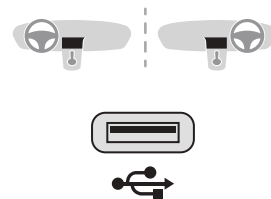
- To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
- To use a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc.

After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by the Manufacturer, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket



You can connect a portable device or a USB memory stick.

It plays the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

These files can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those on the touch screen.

The USB port also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.

For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.

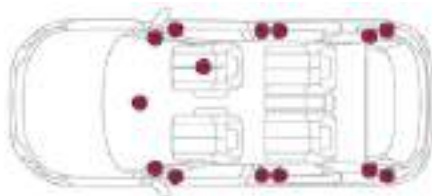
These applications can be managed using the steering mounted controls or the audio system controls.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section .

FOCAL ELECTRA® Premium Hi-Fi system



Your vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity acoustic system designed by the French brand FOCAL®, a specialist in acoustics for more than 35 years and recognised throughout the world for its patented innovations and its unique audio signature.

14 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:

- Central speaker / satellite speakers: Polyglass technology delivering sound immersion and spatialisation.
- High fidelity woofer / mid-range speakers: Polyglass technology delivering balance and precise sound.
- TNF tweeters: inverted dome aluminium technology giving optimum sound dispersion and very detailed higher frequencies.

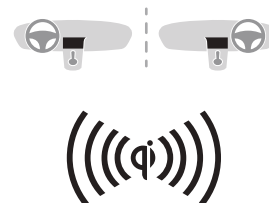
- 12-way active amplification - 515 Watts: Hybrid Class AB / Class D technology providing breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.
- Subwoofer: 200 mm triple coil Power Flower™ technology for defined and dynamic reproduction of lower frequencies.

Storage compartment



- To open the storage compartment, press the front central part.

Wireless smartphone charger



It allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.

The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.

The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.

Charging is managed by the smartphone.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

- With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.



When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It

remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.



! Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged, due to the risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process.

Operating check

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging finished.
Fixed green	Compatible device detected. Charging.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Fault with the device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.



If the indicator lamp is lit orange:

– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.

or

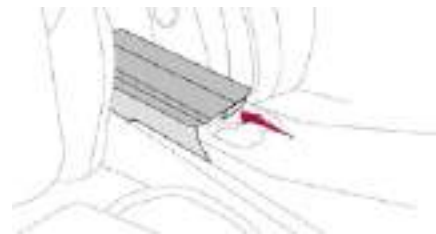
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front armrest

It includes a storage space.

Opening



► Press the lever beneath the cover. The cover opens in two parts.

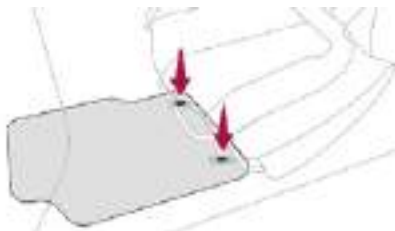
Closing



► Replace the two parts of the cover.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fasteners supplied in the enclosed sachet.

The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.



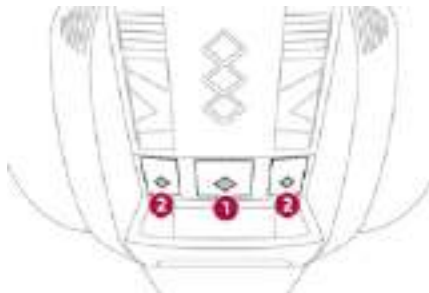
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suitable for the fasteners already present in the vehicle; these fasteners must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps



1. Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp
2. Front touch-sensitive reading lamps



3. Rear touch-sensitive reading lamps

Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp

It comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the ignition is switched off.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps come on and go off at the same time as the courtesy lamp.

A long press on the courtesy lamp completely deactivates it from coming on (confirmed by the "OFF" symbol).

Touch-sensitive reading lamps

- With the ignition on, press the corresponding reading lamp.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

At night, the ambience lighting automatically comes on / switches off when the sidelamps are switched on / off.



Activation / deactivation and adjustment of the light intensity as well as the choice of colour are set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

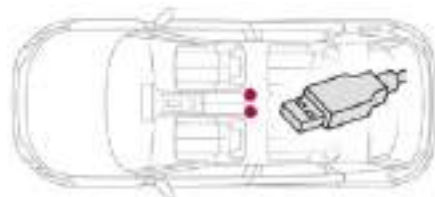


The passenger compartment ambience lighting is also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.

For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear fittings

USB sockets



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge the connected portable device.

Rear armrest



The armrest incorporates two cup holders.

Ski flap

Mechanism for storing and transporting long objects.

Opening

- ▶ Lower the rear armrest.
- ▶ Pull the flap handle downwards.



- ▶ Lower the flap.
- ▶ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings



1. Load space cover
2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
3. Boot lamp
4. Rear seat folding controls
5. Hooks
6. Stowing rings
7. Adjustable boot floor (2-position)
8. Storage well/Tool box under the floor

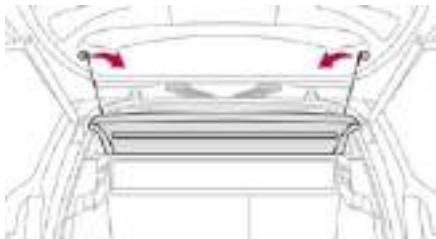
i The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets.

These nets are available as an accessory. For more information, contact a dealer.

Load space cover shelf

It consists of two sections:

- a fixed section with an open storage space.
- a movable section which rises when the boot is opened, with an open storage space.



To remove the load space cover shelf:

- Unhook the two cords.
- Raise the movable section slightly, then unclip it on each side.
- Unclip the fixed section on each side, then take out the load space cover shelf.

! In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover shelf can turn into projectiles.

12 V accessory socket

- To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.
- Switch on the ignition.

! The connection of an unapproved electrical device, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

2-position boot floor

This two-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

- High position (**100 kg max.**): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position (**150 kg max.**): maximum boot volume.

i On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:

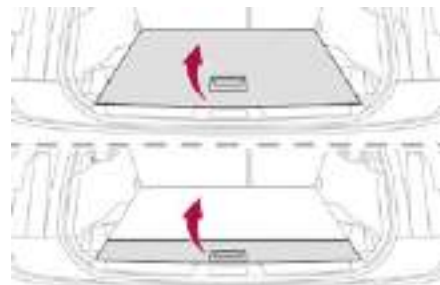
- Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.



To keep it in the inclined position:

- From the high position, lift the floor towards the load space cover.
- Take it past the retractable stops, then rest the floor on these stops.

Storage well



- Fully raise the boot floor or lift the hinged floor carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel with the tool kit.
- The battery charging cable (Hybrid).

Boot lamp

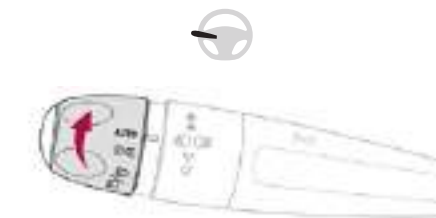
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- in energy economy mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting



AUTO Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps

 Sidelamps only

 Dipped or main beam headlamps

i Remote rear lamps

When the vehicle's lamps are on, opening the tailgate automatically switches illumination from the brake lamps, sidelamps and direction indicator lamps to the lamps located in the rear bumper, to maintain the safety of the vehicle.

Headlamp dipping



► Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In "AUTO" and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by pulling the stalk.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

Rear foglamps



They only work if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.



► Rotate the ring forwards to switch them on and backwards to switch them off. When the lamps are switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

Front foglamps/Rear foglamps



They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



- Rotate the ring forwards:
 - once to switch on the front foglamps,
 - a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.
- Rotate the ring backwards:
 - once to switch off the rear foglamps,
 - a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must

only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

i Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "AUTO" position, then to the desired position.

If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge of the battery (entering energy economy mode).

i Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

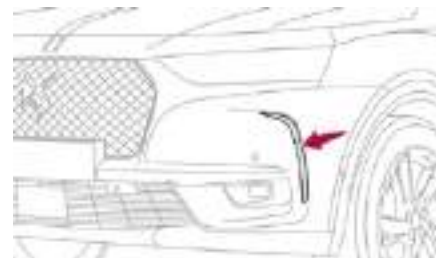
i Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

i Travelling abroad

The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows, without modification, driving in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

However, for versions with "Full LED" headlamps, the Adaptive Front System fazzling drivers of vehicles coming towards you.

Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps



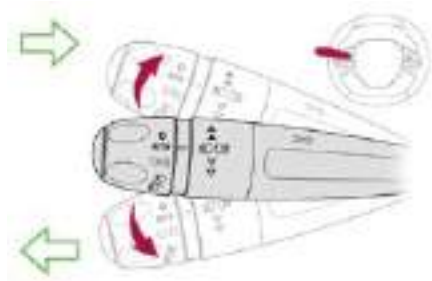
The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Direction indicators



- ▶ Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

- ▶ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime running lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- ▶ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, move the lighting control stalk up or down, depending which side the traffic is on (for example, when parking on the left, moving the lighting control stalk upwards turns on the right-hand sidelamps).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

- ▶ To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

 In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the "AUTO" position, when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

 You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving / Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Door mirror spotlamps

These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.

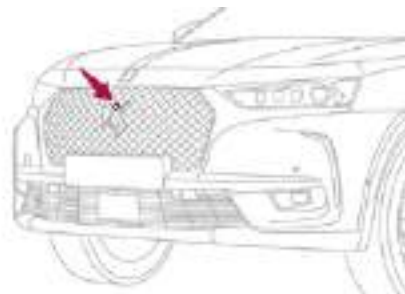
The spotlamps come on automatically:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when a door is opened.
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions.

They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

DS NIGHT VISION



In conditions of low exterior light, the system uses an infrared camera at the front of the vehicle to identify and signal the presence of pedestrians and animals in the driver's field of vision. To benefit from the permanent display of the infrared camera image in the instrument panel, select the "Night Vision" display mode by turning the knob on the left-hand side of the steering wheel. When the conditions are met, an alert is triggered if there is a risk of collision.

The permanent display disappears upon switching off the ignition or if the conditions are not met.



DS NIGHT VISION is a driving aid system that cannot, under any circumstances, replace the personal assessment of night-time visibility and traffic conditions. In some conditions, the contrasts in temperature are insufficient and the system may not detect all dangers or, conversely, it may give false warnings (e.g. engines of lorries parked on the edge of the road).

Conditions for operation

- With the engine running and in Stop mode of Stop & Start.
- Very low light conditions with dipped beam headlamps on and in good working order.
- Temperature between -30°C and +28°C.
- Speed below 99 mph (160 km/h).
- Detection of animals taller than 0.50 m.

Operation



Activation/deactivation of the function is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



If all the operating conditions are met, this indicator lamp comes on in green: the display in the instrument panel (with "Night Vision" mode selected) and triggering of alerts are available.

 If certain operating conditions (speed or temperature) are not met, the indicator lamp comes on in orange: only the display in the instrument panel is available (in "Night Vision" mode).

Whilst the exterior light is too bright or the dipped beam headlamps have not been switched on, the alerts are not available.



The image provided by the camera is displayed in shades of grey in the instrument panel; warm objects appear brighter than cold objects. Once pedestrians or animals are detected, they appear in yellow frames.



When the system detects a risk of a collision with pedestrians or animals, it triggers an alert: a symbol appears in the centre of the display window. The silhouette of the pedestrians or animals is framed in red. If the "Night Vision" display mode has not been selected, the alert is triggered in the form of a temporary window.

In the event of an alert, the driver may act by making an avoiding manoeuvre or by braking.

Operating limits

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (falling snow, heavy rain, thick fog),
- camera masked by snow, mud or dust,
- camera scratched after going through roller car washes repeatedly,
- very high outside temperatures,
- at the top or bottom of a steep slope,
- on a very winding road,
- in a bend,
- after an impact which may have impaired the camera settings or damaged it,
- after repainting of the grille outside the dealer network or a qualified workshop.

Maintenance recommendations

The infrared camera has a wash nozzle connected to the vehicle's front screenwash system.

This nozzle operates every 5th use of the screenwash.

Regularly check that the camera is clean.

In bad weather, or in wintry conditions, ensure that the camera is not covered with mud, ice or snow.

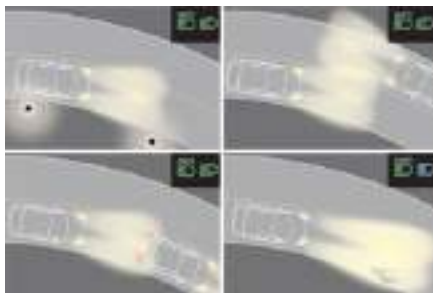
Malfunction

 An orange warning lamp coming on whilst all the operating conditions have been met, accompanied by a message, indicates a system malfunction.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic headlamp dipping

When the ring is in the "AUTO" position, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h). When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlights to be lit:



- The dipped beam headlights remain lit. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:



- The main beam headlights come on automatically. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the fog lamps are switched on or the system detects dense fog. When the fog lamps are switched off or the vehicle leaves the area of dense fog, the function is automatically reactivated.



This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ▶ A "headlamp flash" pauses the function:
 - If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.
 - If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlights again.



The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (snowfall, heavy rain, etc.).
- If the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker).
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example, vehicles driving behind a safety barrier on a motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.



Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Adaptive Front System (AFS)

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED technology headlamps.

The AFS function manages several lighting modes, specific to each driving situation.

The intensity and direction of the main headlamps and the modules vary so as to increase or reduce the range of the lighting.

The modules rotate and tilt so as to expand and direct the light beam to increase or decrease the lighting up of the sides of the road.



This function is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must continually adapt the driving of the vehicle to the visibility and traffic conditions.

Activation/Deactivation

- Put the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position.
- In the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu, select "Adaptive lighting".

"City" mode



The headlamps provide medium-intensity illumination supplemented by the modules facing outwards.

The width of the beam is increased to allow the driver to better distinguish hazards on the side of the roads (pedestrians, intersections).

The range of this lighting is approximately 280 m. This mode is activated once the vehicle has been running for more than 3 seconds at a speed lower than 31 mph (50 km/h).

"Road" mode



This lighting provides an improved light beam, an increased intensity of the headlamps and a decreased intensity of the modules.

The range of this lighting is approximately 330 m. This mode is activated once the vehicle has been running for more than 2 seconds at a speed between 31 mph (50 km/h) and 68 mph (110 km/h).

"Motorway" mode



The headlamps and modules create a cone of light with a high beam, suitable for fast roads. The range of this lighting is approximately 370 m. This mode is activated once the vehicle has been running for more than 5 seconds at a speed greater than 68 mph (110 km/h).

"Rain" mode



This mode is activated when the windscreen wipers are on.

The beam is widened. The power of the modules is increased to enable the driver to see the road markings more easily, whilst the intensity of the main headlamps is reduced so as to improve the driver's vision (taking reflections caused by a wet road into account).

The range of this lighting is approximately 330 m.

Cornering lighting



If your vehicle is so equipped, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

Activation / Deactivation



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Switching on / off

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on.

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

It becomes inactive:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
- above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Dynamic cornering lighting



Available only on versions equipped with "Full LED" technology headlamps.

The headlamps follow the trajectory of the vehicle in bends to provide better lighting of the road.

Activation / Deactivation



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Switching on / off

This system operates from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

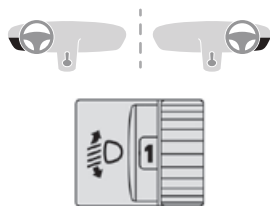
The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

- when reverse gear is engaged.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen or xenon headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of these headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1** 5 people.
- 2** 5 people + loads in the boot.
- 3** Driver only + loads in the boot.
- 4 5 6** Not used.



The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of the Full LED technology headlamps

This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlamp beams according to the load in the vehicle.



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Wiper control stalk



In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and on the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.



Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2

Fast wiping (heavy rain)

1

Normal wiping (moderate rain)

Int

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)

0

Off

 Single wipe (press down and release).
or

AUTO Automatic.

Refer to the corresponding section.

 After switching off the ignition, a slight movement of the windscreen wipers to store them under the bonnet may occur.

 In position **1** or **2**, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h). When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

 If the ignition has been switched off with the windscreen wiper active, it is necessary to operate the control stalk to reactivate the wiping when the ignition is switched on (unless the ignition is off for less than 1 minute).

Single wipe

► Pull the stalk briefly towards you.

Front screenwash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

The screenwash and windscreen wipers operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled.

Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

 The front screenwash jets are integrated in the tips of each arm.

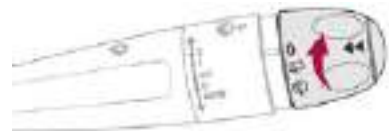
The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid.

In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the fluid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

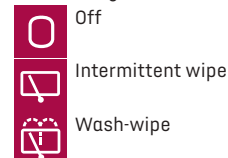
 To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.

Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.



Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the screen.

This function is activated by default.

 In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Rear screenwash

- Turn the ring all the way towards the dashboard and hold.

The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned.

A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care.
- clean them regularly using soapy water.
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



- Within one minute of switching off the ignition, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.

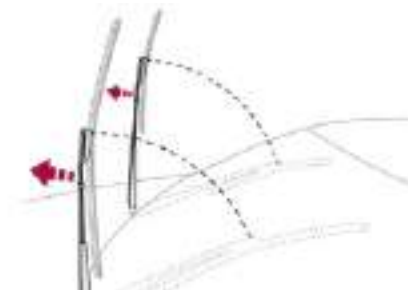
- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

i Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.

Do not touch the wiper blades. Risk of irreparable deformation.

Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

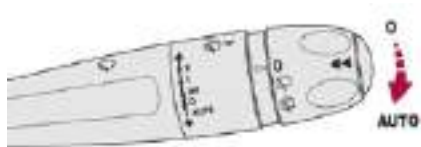
- Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In AUTO mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. If rain is detected, the wiping adapts to the intensity of the rainfall automatically. Detection of rainfall is by means of a rain/sunshine sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

AUTO This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int, 1 or 2**).

AUTO This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode. Have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.

– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorised dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot

be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

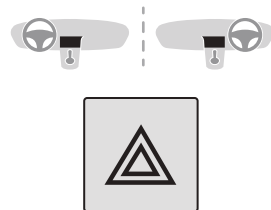
! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**

The relevant certificates are available on the <http://service.dsautomobiles.com> website.

Hazard warning lamps

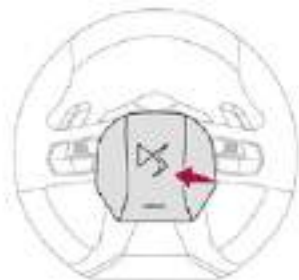


► Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be turned off by pressing the button again.

Horn



- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in **ELECTRIC** mode (100% electric driving).

The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.

Malfunction

 In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call (PE112)

- In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.

'Localised Emergency Call' immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.

- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp flashes when the vehicle data is sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

 If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

 'Localised Emergency Call' is a service that can be accessed free of charge.

System operation

- Upon switching on the ignition, if the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- If the indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction
- If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the emergency battery.

In the latter two cases, emergency and assistance call services may not work.

Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

 The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Data processing

 All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** In areas covered by 'Localised Emergency Call' and 'Localised Assistance Call'.

The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.

Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the "112" European single emergency call number.

The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a

call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations are stored.

When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button 2 for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).

► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

 Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or position) between your vehicle and the DS AUTOMOBILES brand.

It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.

By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

 If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

* According to the geographic coverage of 'Localised Emergency Call', 'Localised Assistance Call' and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

 For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

 If you benefit from the DS CONNECT BOX offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, you have available additional services in your personal space, via the website in your country. For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

 This warning lamp comes on fixed in the event of an ABS malfunction.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

 This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 The normal operation of the ABS may result in slight vibrations in the brake pedal.

 **When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

 When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

 After an impact, have these systems checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation optimises traction using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid wheel spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability while accelerating.

If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This warning lamp on the instrument panel flashes to indicate that they are operating.

Deactivation / Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle stuck in mud, immobilised in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be useful to deactivate the ASR system to freely spin the wheels and regain traction. Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Deactivation / reactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

Malfunction



In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an onscreen message and audible signal.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR / DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures used by dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, to ensure that these systems remain effective in winter conditions. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for the vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.

Between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer, it acts on the brakes to

stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



This warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel and the brake lamps light up to draw attention to this corrective action.

For information on towed loads and masses, refer to the **Technical data** section or your vehicle's registration certificate

To ensure complete safety while driving with a

Towing device, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

If you wish to continue towing a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



The trailer stability assist system offers enhanced safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.), or to drive at excessive speeds. In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.

When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

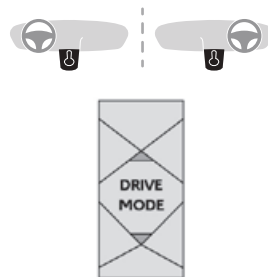
 The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of grip.

Advanced Traction Control

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.

 For optimum grip on snow, it is recommended to fit the vehicle with winter tyres.

Activation/Deactivation



► Press the **DRIVE MODE** button to choose one of the three driving modes; the different modes are displayed in the instrument panel.

► Depending on the circumstances, select "**Snow**", "**Mud**" or "**Sand**".

The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.

► To deactivate, select "**Normal**" mode or any other driving mode.

The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Operating modes

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

 Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,

- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a waterway.

Seat belts

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to automatically adjust to your shape. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.

The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiter

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.



In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may

trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

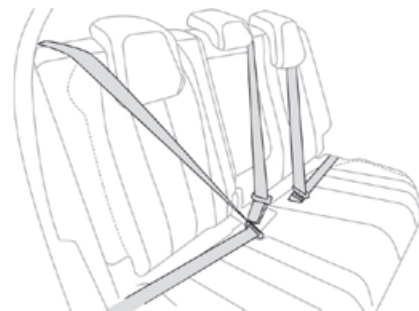
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Height adjustment



- To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.

The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

For the centre seat, the buckle is held horizontally by an elastic strap if the centre seat belt is not being used.

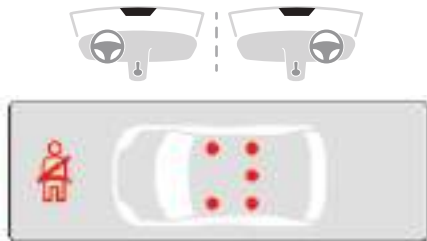
Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unlocking

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened alerts



Not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

It comes on in red in both the instrument panel and the front passenger airbag and seat belts warning lamps display, once the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Seat belts not fastened / unfastened identification warning lamp

The red indicator lamps on the display indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or unfastened.

Not fastened at the front

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and / or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After two minutes, these warning lamps remain on as long as the front seatbelts are not fastened.

Not fastened at the rear

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up for around thirty seconds, if one or more rear seat belts are not fastened.

Unfastened

After the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and / or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for 2 minutes. After this time, these warning lamps remain on as long as the front seatbelts are not fastened.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt:

- must be tightened as close to the body as possible;
- must be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, ensuring that it is not twisted;
- must only be used to secure one person;
- must not show signs of tearing or fraying;
- must not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's

seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Airbags

General information

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters at the front seats and at the rear outer seats.

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

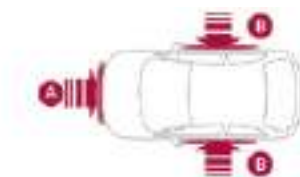
- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be

deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

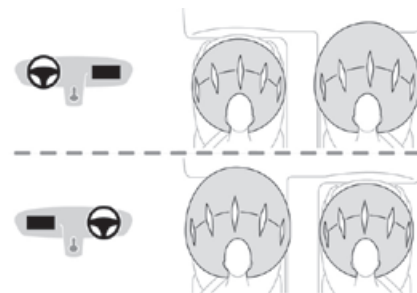


- A.** Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

i When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.

This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of head and chest injuries. The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

i The front airbags are adaptive. In particular, they inflate less firmly in the presence of a smaller occupant, with the seat set in a forward longitudinal position.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**. The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags



In the event of a serious side impact, this system protects the driver and front passenger to mitigate the risk of injury to the chest between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice



For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal upright sitting position.

Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must only be carried out by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.



Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothing, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Child seats

 The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

 **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

 Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Advice

 An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle.

If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear**"Forward facing" or "Rearward facing"**

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat or the "rearward facing" child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

► Verify that the backrest of the "forward facing" child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and is ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, with the **backrest straightened**.

"Forward facing"

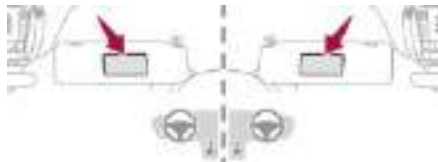
! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.



Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Passenger airbag OFF

! For your child's safety, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would be exposed to the risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the control is located inside the glove box.



With the ignition off:

- To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.
- To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

 This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or

 This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal the activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**L1**

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.
Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats.
The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**L6**

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.
Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

			Weight of the child/indicative age				
Seat			Front passenger airbag	Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat with height adjustment (d) or without height adjustment (e)		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 (f)	Side rear seats Centre rear seat (c) (g)			U	U	U	U

U: seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and / or "forward facing" use.

UF: seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.

X: seat position not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) The front height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

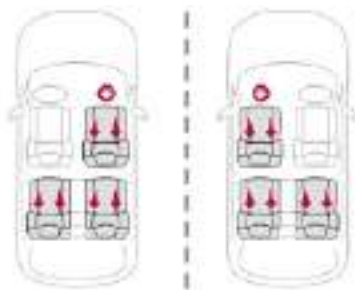
(e) The backrest must be straightened.

(f) To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat at the rear, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

(g) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear seat.

"ISOFIX" mountings

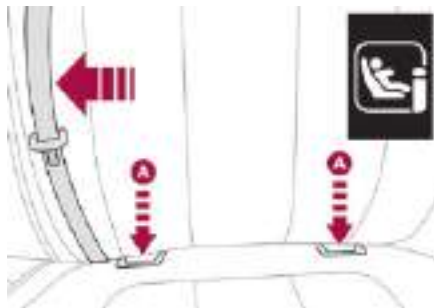
The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



* The electrically-adjusted front passenger seat does not have ISOFIX mountings.

The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:

– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



The 2 latches of **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

– One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing seats fitted with an upper strap.



Front seat



** Depending on country of sale.

Rear seats

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ▶ Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
- ▶ Route the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, in-between the 2 head restraint anchor points.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
Installed only on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.
The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Suitable for forward-facing installation only.
Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or the rear side seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the i-Size logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat		Front passenger airbag										
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat with manual adjustments (b)	Deactivated "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
		Activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF/IL		
	Passenger seat with electric adjustments	Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"										

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat		Front passenger airbag										
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver's seat		X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Rear seat behind the passenger seat		X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Rear centre seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which can be:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seat not suitable for installing an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.

- (b)

Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.

Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

These i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position,

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat		Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Manually-adjustable passenger seat (b)	Deactivated "OFF"	i-U
		Activated "ON"	i-UF
	Electrically-adjustable passenger seat	Deactivated "OFF"	Not i-Size
		Activated "ON"	Not i-Size
Row 2	Rear side seats		i-U
	Rear centre seat		Not i-Size

- i-U:

suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing" and "rearward facing".
- i-UF:

only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category which are "forward facing".
- X:

seat position not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.
- (a)

Refer to the current legislation in your country before placing a child in this seat position.

- (b)

Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.

Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.

Manual child lock

This system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior handle.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

Locking / Unlocking



- To lock, turn the **red** control as far as it will go using the integral key:
 - To the right on the left-hand rear door.
 - To the left on the right-hand rear door.
- To unlock, turn it in the opposite direction.



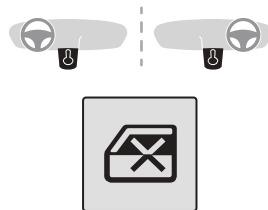
! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

(Depending on version)

This remote control system prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles and the use of the rear electric windows.

Activation/Deactivation



- With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock. When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside and to operate the rear electric windows from the driver's controls.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

- ▶ Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- ▶ Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- ▶ During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

- ! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.**

Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

- ! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

- ! **Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

- ! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

- ! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

- ! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.**

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- ▶ Check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- ▶ Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- ▶ For hybrid engines, place the mode selector in **4WD** position (depending on version).
- ▶ Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
- ▶ Do not stop and do not switch off the engine. On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing

- ! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

- ! Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.

At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

- ! **New vehicle:** do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i If a genuine towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.

► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed, so as to limit the heating-up.
In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased susceptibility to the wind that the vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The keys include an electronic engine immobiliser system, with a code that must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine



The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.

If it is not detected, a message is displayed.

Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.

If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.



The lighting state of the "**START/STOP**" button indicates the presence or absence of the electronic key in the passenger compartment.

Starting

► With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.

► With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, starting will only occur once the preheating warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

► Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.

In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

i If the engine stalls, release the clutch pedal and fully depress it again, the engine will restart automatically.

Starting hybrid vehicles

► Fully depress the brake pedal and press **briefly** on the **START/STOP** button.

READY ► Keep your foot on the pedal until this indicator lamp comes on, indicating the activation of the hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).

By default, the system starts in **ELECTRIC** mode. Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or exterior temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.

It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

i When the vehicle starts in electric mode, it makes no noise.

Pay particular attention to pedestrians and cyclists who may not hear the vehicle coming despite the pedestrian horn.

Switching off

► Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine at idle.

► With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.

► With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button..

► For hybrid vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** warning lamp is switched off.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column.

On certain versions with an automatic gearbox (EAT6 / EAT8), the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not switch off.

! With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine

With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

► Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column so that the engine can be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



- Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
 - **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
 - **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.
 - Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
- The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for approximately 5 seconds.
- In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

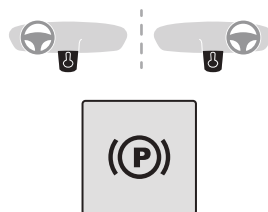
- Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with automatic gearbox (EAT6 / EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



At any time, with the engine running:

- to apply the parking brake, **briefly** pull the control lever;
- to release it, briefly **push** the control lever while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp

(P) This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and on the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake applied".

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake does not work.

As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.

As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

! **When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**
With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
 - ▶ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.
- The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going

off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ▶ Pull briefly on the control lever.
- Confirmation of the application instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off.**

With a manual gearbox

- ▶ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ▶ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! When stationary with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily: risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.**

When the parking brake is applied, the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever come on, accompanied by the onscreen message "Parking brake applied".

! It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

i With automatic operation, it is also possible to manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

Immobilising the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ▶ Switch off the engine.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.

- ▶ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, while mode **N** is selected, opening the driver's door triggers an audible signal. It stops when the driver's door closes again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Use the control lever to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- ▶ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Hold the control lever pressed in the release direction for between 10 and a maximum of 15 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control lever.
- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.

- ▶ Pull the control lever in the "Application" direction for 2 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.



This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going off).

Emergency braking

In the event of a fault with the brake pedal or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction), a continuous pull on the electric parking brake control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled; it is interrupted when the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.

If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- Raise the trigger under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

i Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

! As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine, always select neutral and depress the clutch pedal.

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

- Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Automatic gearbox

Automatic 6 or 8-speed gearbox with a push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

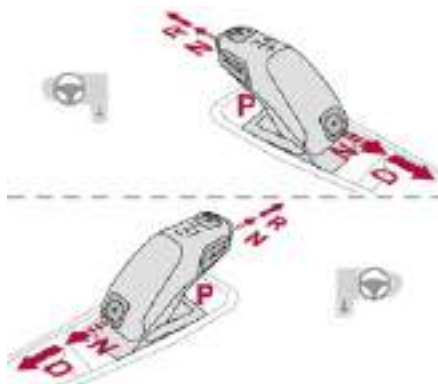
Gearbox selector positions

- P.** Park
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse gear
- N.** Neutral
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off, or to allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
- D.** Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
- M.** Driving in manual mode
The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

Push selector



- A. Button P**
To put the gearbox into Park mode.
- B. Unlock button**
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal. Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.
- C. Button M**
To change from mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
(Depending on version: with DS PARK PILOT, the manual mode is accessed via the **DRIVE MODE** control)
- D.** Gearbox status indicators (**P, R, N, D**)



► Move the selector by pressing it forwards (**N** or **R**) or rearwards (**N** or **D**) once or twice, passing the point of resistance if necessary.

The push selector returns to its initial position when released.

For example, to change from **P** to **R**, either push forwards twice without passing the point of resistance or push just once, passing the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering-mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



► Pull the "+" or "-" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Displays on the instrument panel

With the ignition on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1 to D6 or D8: automatic mode.

M1 to M6 or M8: manual mode (temporary or permanent).

-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**.

The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

- From mode **P**:
 - Fully depress the brake pedal.
 - Press the **Unlock** button.
 - While continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
 - Fully depress the brake pedal.
 - While continuing to depress the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

- ▶ Slow down until you come to a stop.
- ▶ Depress the brake pedal, then press the **Unlock** button.
- ▶ While maintaining the presses, select mode **R**.

Permanent manual mode

Entering the mode:

With EAT8 without DS PARK PILOT button and EAT6:

- ▶ With mode **D** initially selected.
- ▶ Press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.

With EAT8 and DS PARK PILOT button:

- ▶ Press the **DRIVE MODE** control.
- ▶ Select "Manual" mode, which is displayed on the instrument panel.

Exiting the mode:

- ▶ Push forwards once to return to **D**.
- or
- ▶ Press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.
- or
- ▶ Select another mode using the **DRIVE MODE** control.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheeling

For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

 If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the outside temperature, the road profile, the vehicle load and the driving style.

For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached. Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the road speed and engine speed permit.

Starting the vehicle

From mode **P**:

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ▶ Push once or twice rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Start the engine.
 - ▶ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.
- Then, from **D** or **R**:
- ▶ Release the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- The vehicle moves off immediately.



With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox, when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically and immediately. However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing for the process of putting the vehicle into free-wheeling mode). Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

 The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those in the instrument panel.

Operating faults

Gearbox malfunction

 This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

 This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive cautiously and visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In certain cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

 This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

 Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from traffic, and call a dealer or a qualified workshop.

e-EAT8 electric automatic gearbox (Hybrid)

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with a push selector and regenerative braking function.

With the exception of manual mode and regenerative braking, the operation is identical to that of other EAT8 gearboxes.

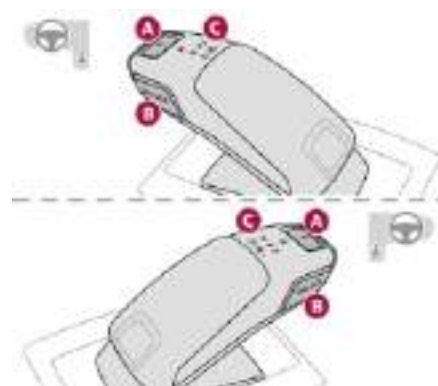
For more information on the **Operation** or the **Malfunctions** of the EAT8 gearbox, refer to the corresponding sections.

Gearbox selector positions

- P.** Car park
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse gear
- N.** Neutral
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.

- D/B.** Automatic forward gear (**D**) or automatic forward gear with regenerative braking (**B**)
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load. With the regenerative braking function activated, the gearbox also controls braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

Push selector



- A.** Button **P**
To put the gearbox into Park mode.
- B.** **Unlock** button
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal. Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.

C. Gearbox state indicator lamps (R, N, D/B)

Displays in the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1 to D8: automatic forward gear.

B1 to B8: automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function activated.

In all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.

The state of the gearbox remains displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Regenerative braking

The regenerative braking function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.

When the accelerator pedal is released, mechanical energy is recovered and used to partially recharge the battery.

► While in mode **D/B**, pushing the pulse selector backwards activates/deactivates the function. The **D** on the instrument panel is replaced with a **B**.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

If the battery is almost fully charged, the braking effect when the accelerator pedal is released may be limited.

DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION

This suspension adapts itself to the following parameters: state and profile of the road, load of the vehicle, driving style and selected driving mode.

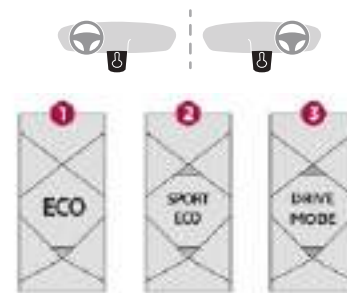
It is managed by a computer, which interprets the data transmitted by different sensors to apply the optimal level of damping to each shock absorber. It is associated with a camera, located at the top of the windscreen, which constantly monitors the state of the road. Depending on the additional information transmitted by the camera, the suspension anticipates the possible defects of the road.

It offers three modes: **Comfort**, **Normal** and **Sport**. The mode can be selected using the **DRIVE MODE** control on the central console.

For more information on the **Driving modes**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Driving modes

The number and type of driving modes available depend on the vehicle's engine and equipment. Driving modes are selected using one of the following controls, depending on version:



1. Pressing the control activates **ECO** mode. The indicator lamp comes on.
2. Pressing the front of the control activates **SPORT** mode; pressing the rear activates **ECO** mode. The corresponding indicator lamp comes on.
3. Pressing the control displays the modes on the instrument panel.

The selected mode is activated immediately.

• The choice of driving mode is also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function; refer to the corresponding section.

With petrol / Diesel engines

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **NORMAL** mode is selected by default.

ECO

Reduces fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the accelerator pedal, the automatic gearbox and the gear shift indicator. Free-wheeling in **ECO** mode: depending on version, with the EAT8 gearbox, moving into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking. You can save fuel by anticipating the need to slow down and lifting your foot fully off the accelerator pedal.

COMFORT

Allows more comfortable driving on poor road surfaces, over speed humps and sleeping policemen, or during long journeys by activating the DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION function, which associates the variable damping system with the multifunction camera to detect the condition of the road surface.

NORMAL

Restores the vehicle's original settings.

SPORT

Enables more dynamic driving, acting on the power steering, variable damping system (DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION), pedals, gear changes with an automatic gearbox, ambient engine sounds and the possibility of displaying the

vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel.

MANUAL

Permanent "Manual" mode with an automatic gearbox and DS PARK PILOT. Enables manual gear changing using the steering-mounted paddles.

With hybrid engine

Each time the ignition is switched on, **ELECTRIC** mode is selected by default.

ELECTRIC

Allows 100% electric driving. The maximum speed is approximately 84 mph (135 km/h). When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **ELECTRIC** mode, the message "Electric mode currently unavailable" is displayed in the instrument panel. The vehicle automatically changes to **HYBRID** mode.

The lighting of a blue LED under the interior rear view mirror, visible from outside the vehicle, confirms driving in **ELECTRIC** mode.

 The lighting of the LED can be deactivated by inserting the tip of a paper clip type accessory into the hole under the mirror.

Conditions of activation

– Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore

recommended. The **ELECTRIC** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.

– Exterior temperature between 0°C and 45°C.

Manually exiting the mode

– Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
– Select another mode.

 In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.

HYBRID

Optimises the fuel consumption of the vehicle by managing the **alternating or simultaneous operation of the two types of engine**, according to road conditions and driving style.

In **HYBRID** mode, it is possible to drive in 100% electric mode if the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration requirements are moderate.

 When navigation is activated, the use of **HYBRID** mode is advisable to optimise electrical consumption.

SPORT

Allows more dynamic driving to take advantage of the vehicle's maximum performance.

Electric power is used to supplement the petrol engine as long as there is energy left in the battery.

COMFORT

Depending on equipment.

Combines the **HYBRID** mode and DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION (controlled shock absorption option).

In **COMFORT** mode, the suspension favours soft shock absorption to improve driving comfort on uneven surfaces.

 For more information on **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION**, refer to the corresponding section.

4WD (4-wheel drive)

Depending on equipment.

4WD mode ("4-wheel drive") improves the vehicle's grip at low and moderate speeds by driving all 4 wheels continuously.

This mode is especially suited to snow-covered roads and difficult terrain (mud, sand, etc.) as well as ford crossings, at moderate speed.

Depending on the driving conditions and the battery charge level, **4WD** mode may be 100% electric.

 This mode will be even more effective if the vehicle is fitted with suitable tyres, such as winter tyres.

The grip can be improved up to 84 mph (135 km/h) using the electric motors; above this speed, the vehicle is driven by the front wheels only.

Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system is only active when:

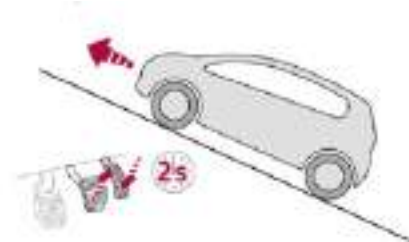
- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

 Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. After that, ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the electric parking brake control lever are on fixed.

 The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may advise skipping one or more gears.

Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice. This function cannot be deactivated.



With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.



The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.

Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

To deactivate/reactivate the function:



► Press the button.

A message in the instrument panel confirms the change of status.

When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamps



Function activated.



Function deactivated or malfunction.



Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



STOP & START SYSTEM

 Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.

- **with a manual gearbox**, at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h), when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**, at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) for BlueHDi 180 versions, or below 2 mph (3 km/h) for PureTech 180 and PureTech

225 versions, when you depress the brake pedal or place the gear selector in mode **N**.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine does not go into standby if one of the operating conditions is not met and in the following cases.

- Steep slope (rising or falling).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.



After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available as long as the vehicle has not reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).



During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Engine restarting (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

► **With a manual gearbox:** with the clutch pedal fully depressed.

► **With an automatic gearbox:**

- With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
- Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine restarts automatically if the operating condition is once again met and in the following cases.

- Vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h) with manual gearbox versions, or PureTech 180 and PureTech 225 versions with automatic gearbox, or exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) with BlueHDi 180 versions with automatic gearbox.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfuncions



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments, then remains on, accompanied by an onscreen message.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the "START/STOP" button.



The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.



Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including

the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding,
- lengthens braking distances,
- causes premature wear of the tyres,
- increases fuel consumption.



The inflation pressures specified for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.



Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.



Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.

► If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).



The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the

vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

 With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu..

- ▶ In this menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab.
- ▶ In the page, select the **"Under-inflation initialisation"** function.
- ▶ Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction



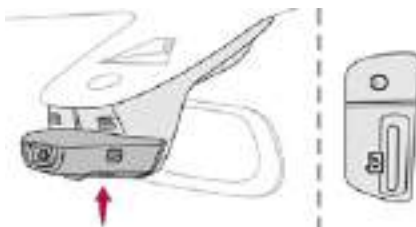
These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS ConnectedCAM

(Depending on country of sale.)



This camera, installed at the top of the windshield and connected wirelessly, allows you to:

- Take photos and videos on demand and share them.
- Send the vehicle's GPS coordinates to a smartphone.
- Record videos automatically in the event of a vehicle impact.



As the use of the DS ConnectedCAM is under your control and your responsibility, you must comply with the regulations for the protection of personal data (images of other people, vehicle number plates, protected buildings, etc.). Check first that your insurance company accepts the footage collected from the DS ConnectedCAM as evidence.



Without exception, any action which the driver takes concerning the camera must be **with the vehicle stationary**.

Operation

To use all camera functions, you must perform the following operations:

- ▶ Download the **DS ConnectedCAM** application onto a smartphone.
- ▶ Pair the smartphone with the camera following the instructions given by the application.

Pairing is necessary at the first connection. After this it will be automatic.

The default pairing code is: "ConnectedCAM".

On/Off



- ▶ Press and hold this button to switch the camera on/off (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/going off).

When the camera is switched on, video recording is automatic and permanent.

The status of the function is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Managing photos and videos



- ▶ Press this button briefly to take a photo.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.



- ▶ Press and hold this button to record a video.

A micro USB socket also allows the data from the camera to be saved onto other media such as computers, tablets, etc.

Thanks to the **DS ConnectedCAM** application, you can then automatically and immediately share your photos and videos on social networks or by email.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.

Resetting the system



Pressing and holding these two buttons simultaneously resets the system.

This action erases all data recorded in the camera and reinitialises the camera's default pairing code.



For safety reasons, the driver must not use the DS ConnectedCAM application from a smartphone while driving. He or she must perform any action requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.

Malfunction



When a system fault occurs, the indicator lamp in the button flashes.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations



Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.

The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.



Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.



Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during

the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.



Radar

The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged. If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.



Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel,

alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors

The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.

When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not

always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.

The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).

Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.

Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Mats

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed

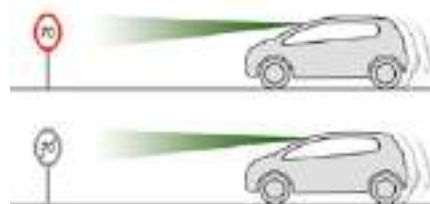
Ensure that the units of speed displayed in the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required

units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.

In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

 Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit. For the system to work correctly when changing country, the speed unit in the instrument panel must correspond to that of the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication
or
2. End of speed limit indication



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.



In the case of suggested maximum speeds, the first time the vehicle exceeds the suggested speed by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed flashing for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- Poor weather (rain, snow).
- Atmospheric pollution.
- Towing.
- Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
- Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
- Young drivers.

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
- Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

 For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

Memorising the speed



► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "MEM" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as the new speed setting.

 If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, the "MEM" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

- Press button **2** **once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed to confirm the request.
- Press button **2** **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This additional system recognises these **road signs** and displays them in the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected.
One-way street: if you start driving the wrong way down a one-way street, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).

Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

With the matrix instrument panel, the display mode selected must be "Road sign recognition".

With the digital instrument panel, the display mode selected must be "Driving".

! The actual road signs always take priority over the display from the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation/Deactivation

 The activation and deactivation is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

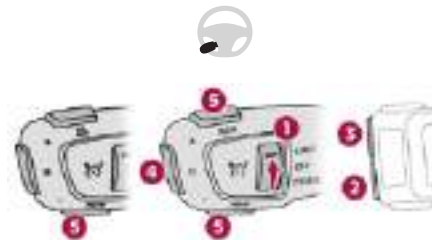
Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

 This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**LIMIT** position) / OFF
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause / resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (MEM display)

For more information on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/pause
7. Speed limiter mode selected
8. Programmed speed value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

Switching on / pausing

- ▶ Turn knob **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.
- ▶ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
- ▶ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

i When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- ▶ Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).

To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, as shown on the instrument panel:

- ▶ Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ▶ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ▶ Press the accelerator pedal down fully. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed speed setting flashes.
- ▶ Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

- ▶ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "OFF" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the speed limiter. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons down, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur. When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle. On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

! **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
The speed setting can be exceeded **temporarily** by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes). To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when this speed is reached again, the display of the speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.

- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Programmable cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

 This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

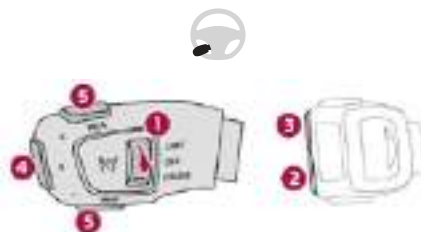
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.

With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

 The cruise control remains active after changing gear on engines fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

 Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pausing / resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)

For more information on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume
7. Cruise control mode selection
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

► Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.

► Release the accelerator pedal.

► Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.

► Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

- i** Operation of the cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
- by pressing the brake pedal.
 - automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the cruise speed setting

Cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting, based on the current speed of the vehicle:

- Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
- Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation shown on the instrument panel:

- Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.

- Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Switching off

- Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "OFF" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a malfunction with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS DRIVE ASSIST

Only available on versions with automatic gearbox.

This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory, using the Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop & Go function in conjunction with the Lane Positioning Assist.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

This system is especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on **Adaptive Cruise Control** and **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking, within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

With the **Stop function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and the restarting of the vehicle.



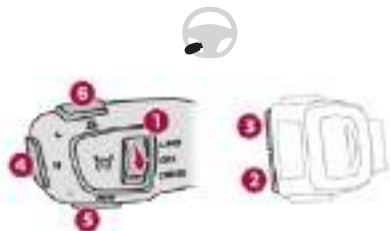
To do so, it has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pausing / resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored
Confirmation of the restarting of the vehicle after automatic stop (versions with Stop & Go function)
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Use

Activating the system (pause)

► With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Switching on cruise control and setting the speed

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).
With an automatic EAT6 gearbox, your speed must be between 1 and 112 mph (2 and 180 km/h).
With an automatic EAT8 gearbox, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

► Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

► Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing / resumption of cruise control

► Press **4** or depress the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, it is also possible to:

- shift from mode **D** to **N**;
- depress the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds;
- press the electric parking brake control.

► Press **4** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:

- when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.
- when the speed of the engine goes below 1100 rpm with a manual gearbox.
- by triggering of the ESC system.

With an EAT6 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; cruise control is paused. The driver should depress the accelerator pedal to move off, then, when above 1 mph (2 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With an EAT8 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press button **4** or the accelerator pedal to move off. If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control, after the function has been paused, the message "Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Modifying the programmed speed setting with the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation function

► Press **5** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting relatively close to the vehicle's current speed.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal" or "Close"), then press again to select a threshold. After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated while acceleration is maintained. "Cruise control suspended" is displayed.

Deactivating the system

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

Displays in the instrument panel



- 7. Vehicle detected by the system (full symbol)
- 8. Cruise control active (colour not in grey)
- 9. Value of the speed setting
- 10. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation
- 11. Vehicle held stationary (versions with automatic gearbox)



- 12. Inter-vehicle distance setting
- 13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Messages and alerts

The "Driving" display mode of the digital instrument panel must have been selected first.



The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.



"Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.



"Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.



"Cruise control paused", vehicle detected.



"Cruise control active", vehicle detected.



"Take back control" (orange).

► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



"Take back control" (red).

► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable". The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function



"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised: cruise control is paused.

The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Stop & Go function



"To move off again, press the accelerator pedal or press the II button" (button 4).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.

After 3 seconds, the driver must accelerate or press button 4 to move off again.



While the vehicle is immobilised, the following recommendations apply:

- Do not open doors.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.



When moving off again, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians and animals, as they may not be detected properly.

Operating limits

Cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

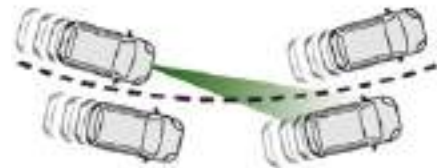
Elements not detected by the system:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations in which the driver must pause the cruise control system:



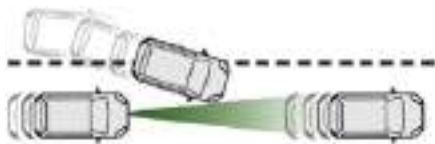
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.
- Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

- Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.



Pay particular attention:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
- When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.



If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
- Brake lamps not working.



If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Towing.
- Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).

Malfunction



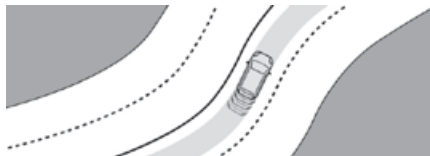
If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms the malfunction. Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Lane Keeping Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen, the system identifies lane markings and steers the vehicle inside this lane to keep it in the lateral position chosen by the driver. This function is primarily suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

Conditions for operation

- Adaptive Cruise Control active.
- Traffic lane marked out by lines on both sides.

- ESC system operational.
- ASR system activated.
- No trailer detected.
- No 'space-saver' spare wheel in use.
- Vehicle not subject to strong lateral g-forces.
- Direction indicators not activated.

Activation/Deactivation



- ▶ With the Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop & Go function activated, press this button. The action is confirmed by:
 - Illumination of the indicator lamp in the button in green.

- Display of the following symbol in the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbol in the instrument panel depends on the operating state of the system:



(grey colour)

At least one of the operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.



(green colour)

All of the operating conditions are met; the system is active.



(orange colour)

The system has a fault.

If the driver no longer wishes to benefit from the system for a while, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.



The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Cruise control

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly. When cruise control is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane. This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.

The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.

The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, whilst keeping hands on the steering

wheel, they must release the pressure to let the system resume control of the steering, but the vehicle will not be automatically centred within the lane.

Pausing/Suspending the system



The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any action on the brake pedal that results in cruise control being paused will also cause the system to be paused.



If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.



If the function is suspended due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, you must reactivate it by pressing the button again.

Automatic pause

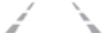
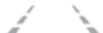
- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane limit markings. In this case, the active lane departure warning function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are again met.

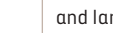
In response to action by the driver: suspension

- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (resulting in a pause until cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is depressed).
- Pausing of the cruise control.
- Deactivation of the ASR.

Driving situations and related alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Off	CRUISE	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise control paused; lane positioning assist not active.
Off	CRUISE	 (green)	 (grey)	Cruise control active; lane positioning assist not active.
Green	CRUISE	 (green)  (green)	 (green)	DS DRIVE ASSIST active, operates normally (correction is executed at the steering wheel).
Green	CRUISE	 (grey)  (grey)	 (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST paused.
Green	CRUISE	 (green)  (green)/(grey)	 (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST active; not all conditions required for lane positioning assist have been met.
Green	OFF or LIMIT	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise control not active; not all conditions required for lane positioning assist have been met.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Green	CRUISE	  (green)/(grey)	  (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST suspended: cruise control and lane positioning assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"Activate cruise control to use the lane positioning assist system"	Activation of lane positioning assist while cruise control is not active.
"Unsuitable conditions, Activation on stand-by"	Activation of lane positioning assist while not all conditions are met.
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold the steering wheel"	Actual or imminent loss of lane positioning assist.
"Retake control"	Simultaneous loss of cruise control and lane positioning assist.

Operating limits

i The Lane Keeping Assist system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

The system may fail to operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:

- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).

- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windscreen area in front of the camera being dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker.
- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

- !** The system must not be activated in the following situations:
- Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
 - When towing, especially with an unconnected or unapproved trailer.
 - Poor weather conditions.
 - Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
 - Driving on racing circuits.
 - Driving on a rolling road.

Malfunction



A system malfunction is indicated by the Service warning lamp coming on and this (orange) symbol, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

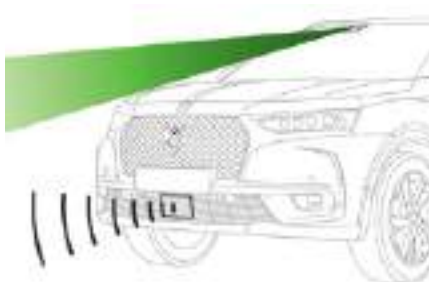


This system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.

This system is comprised of three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance.
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunctional camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.



This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.

It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.



As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

ESC system in working order.

Seat belts fastened for all passengers.

Stabilised speed on unwinding roads.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- Towing a trailer.
- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Vehicles with snow chains fitted.
- Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
- Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
- Towed vehicle, engine running.
- Following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.



The system is automatically deactivated once the use of a different diameter "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the two lateral brake lamps is detected.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.

 The threshold is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

- Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds:
 - "**Distant**".
 - "**Normal**".
 - "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger

threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, the steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, indicating that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, indicating that a collision is imminent. The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

Level 3: in some cases, a vibration alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.



Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

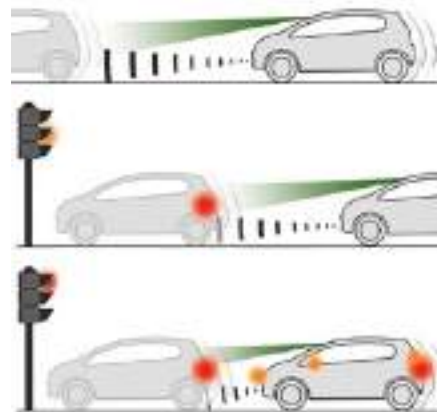
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics.

This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.

 This warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

 The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

 Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

 In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distraction detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Take a break in case of feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

The function comprises the "Driver Attention Alert" and "Driver Attention Alert by camera" systems, combined, depending on version, with the "DS Driver Attention Monitoring" system.

 These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Activation/Deactivation



These functions are activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driver Attention Alert



The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

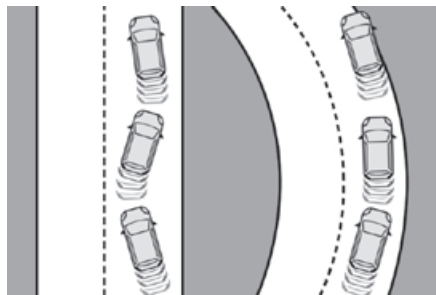
- With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.



As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.

The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert by camera



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance, fatigue or distraction by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

At a first-level alert, the driver is warned by the **"Take care!"** message, accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message **"Dangerous driving: take a break"**, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

DS Driver Attention Monitoring



In versions offering this function, an additional (infrared) camera is fitted on the steering column, behind the steering wheel, to monitor driver behaviour.

The camera analyses, firstly, the direction of the driver's gaze and head to assess their distraction level and, secondly, the closing of their eyelids to assess the level of their vigilance and attention. When the vigilance level (distraction or loss of attention) is low, the system emits an alert. With the "Personal" display mode of the digital instrument panel, the driver can select the permanent display of the "Vigilance level" diagram so that they can monitor this information in real time.

The function activates over 16 mph (25 km/h).

The distraction or loss of attention detection system may be impaired or may not work, especially in the following conditions:

- system's camera field of vision blocked or obstructed.
- wearing certain types of spectacles or sunglasses that are very dark or reflective.
- face partially covered (by your hand, hair, etc.).
- unusual or incorrect driving position.

In no case shall the Manufacturer be held liable in the event of alerts not being given or for consequences associated with the use of this system.

Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.

If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Deactivation / Activation

The function is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.



The function is deactivated and activated by pressing this button.

The button indicator lamp lights up to confirm deactivation of the function.

Detection

If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

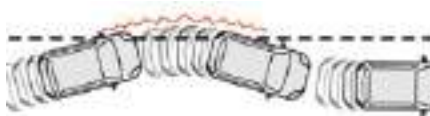
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the road and at the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

- The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
- The traffic lane must be delimited by a dividing line.

- The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.
- The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
- The ESC system must be activated and not faulty.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (for example, if the dividing line marking disappears).

Operation

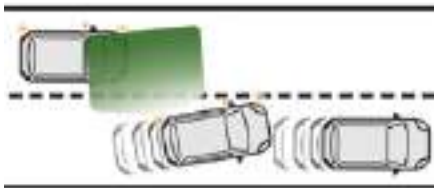
Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the necessary trajectory correction to return the vehicle to its initial path.

The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the Blind Spot Detection system activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory even though the direction indicators are on. For more information on the **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations. These alerts are not displayed sequentially.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	Function deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: – speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), – no lane marking recognised, – ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered, – "sport" driving.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (for example, due to detection of a trailer or use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).
ON		 (green)	Lane marking detection. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of unintentional crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 (orange)/(green) "Take control of the vehicle."	– If, while correcting the trajectory, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. – If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- electrical connection of a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- insufficient contrast between the road surface and the shoulders (e.g. shade),
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Risk of undesirable operation

We recommend deactivating the system in the following driving situations:

- driving on damaged, unstable or very slippery (ice) road surfaces,
- unfavourable weather conditions,
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation / Activation



► Press this button to deactivate / reactivate the system at any time.

 Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button and this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

The system is **automatically reactivated** every time the ignition is switched on.

Malfunction



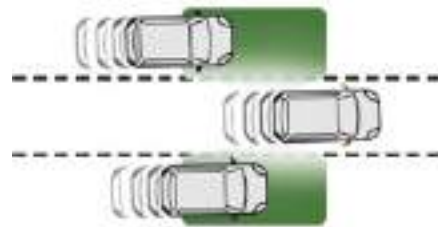
A fault with the system is signalled by the illumination of these warning lamps in the

instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

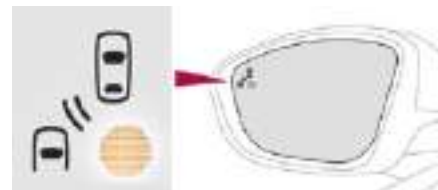
Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system includes sensors, placed on the sides of the bumpers, and warns the driver of the potentially dangerous presence of another vehicle (car, truck, motorcycle) in the blind spot areas of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision).



The warning is given by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken;
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.



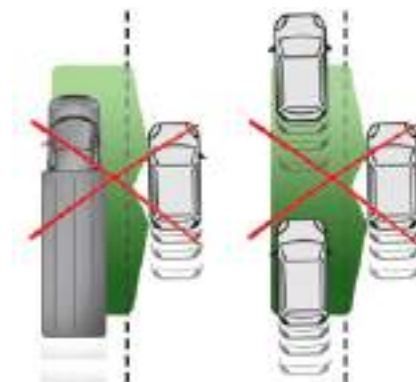
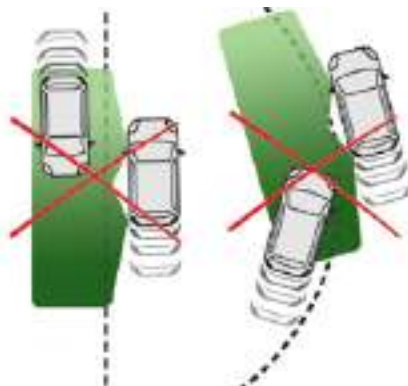
The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by the Manufacturer.

Conditions for operation

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.

- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- In the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.).
- Oncoming traffic.
- Driving on a winding road or a sharp corner.
- When overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision.
- When overtaking quickly.
- In very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
- If the Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT function is activated.

Malfunction

 If the event of malfunction, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

 The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow. Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Active Blind Spot Detection

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicator activated, to help you avoid a collision.

This system is the combination of the Active Lane Departure Warning System and Blind Spot Detection.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

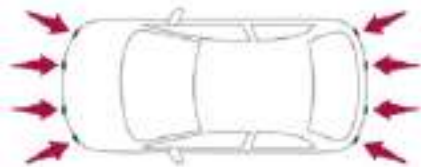
The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h).

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on the **Active Lane Departure Warning System** and **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



Using sensors located in the bumper, this system signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) present in their field of detection.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

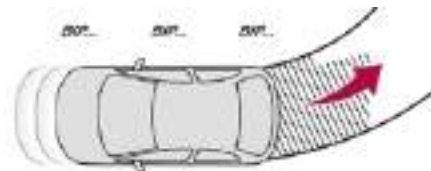
This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty

centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.



Adjusting the audible signal



With DS CONNECT RADIO or DS CONNECT NAV, pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible assistance, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle

is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).



The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, whether in front of or behind it on its path.

Side parking sensors



Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.



Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and

which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

Deactivation / Activation



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist and DS PARK PILOT functions are measuring a space.

For more information on the **Park Assist** or the **DS PARK PILOT**, refer to the corresponding section.



When the vehicle is started, the visual and audible aids will be available after the touch screen has started up.

Operating limits

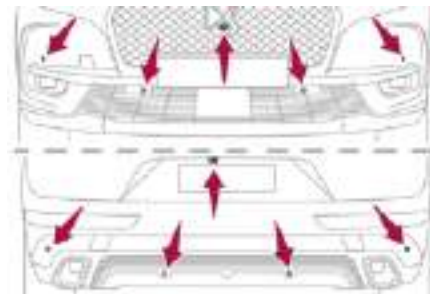
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

  In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal (short beep). Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Reversing camera - 360 Vision

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera

for the Reversing camera and two cameras for 360 Vision.



The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.

The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Various contextual views may be displayed:

- Standard view.
- 180° rear view - 360° front and rear view.
- Zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses to display the best view (standard or zoom).

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

- ▶ Press the button in the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.
- ▶ Select the type of view:

- "Standard view".
- "180° view".
- "Zoom view".
- "AUTO view".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



Using one or two cameras, the close surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.

It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With 360 Vision, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.

When the function is activated, it is possible that the view from above is not displayed. If the system is activated when the vehicle has already moved, the view from above can be fully displayed.

Reversing camera

Rear vision

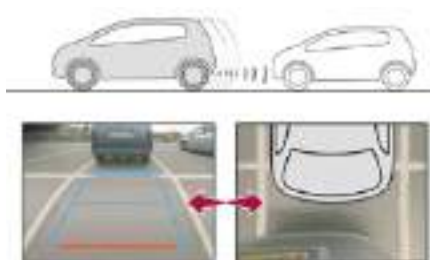


To activate the camera, located on the tailgate, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system is deactivated:

- Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
- Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
- Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view



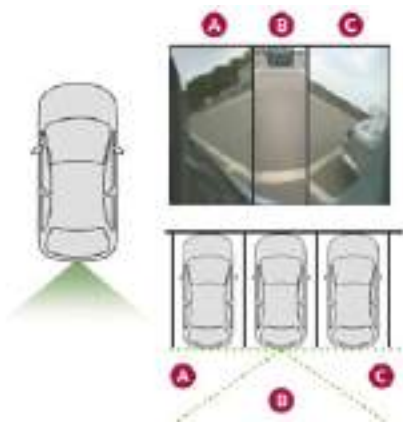
The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is only available via the view selection menu.

360 Vision

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the tailgate opening control.

Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings on the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision) when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision) when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

Rear vision



The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- when shifting out of reverse (the rear view image is replaced by the front view image after 7 seconds).

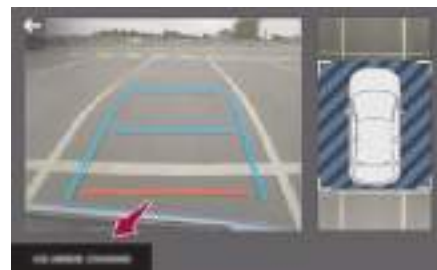
– by pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

i If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the area behind the vehicle on the view from above goes dark. The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Reversing camera.

For more information on the **Reversing camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front and rear vision



 With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu:

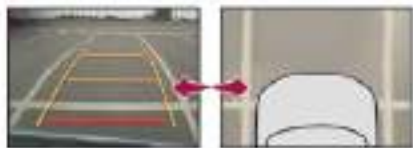
► Select "**Panoramic visual aid**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

- Automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from the front view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



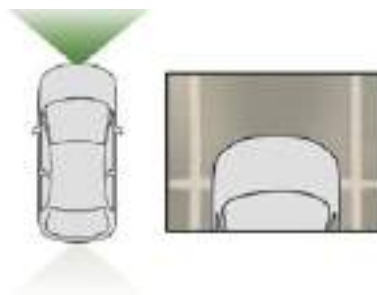
The area in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The orange lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two orange lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view

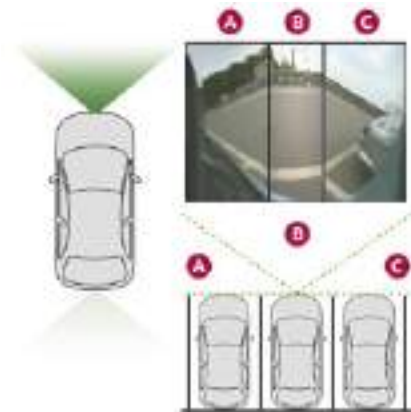


The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking space in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance for vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in this space while the driver controls the driving direction, engagement of gears, acceleration and braking. To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of Reversing camera or 360° Vision and the activation of the parking sensors. The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

- Entering a "parallel" parking space
- Leaving a "parallel" parking space
- Entering a "bay" parking space

Operation

- When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

Activating the function



The function is activated in the **Vehicle / Driving** touch screen menu.

Select **"Park Assist"**.

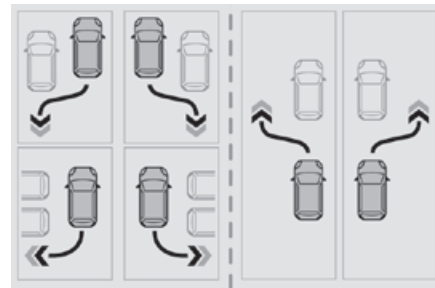


Activating the function deactivates the Blind Spot Detection.



You can deactivate the function at any time until the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre begins, by pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.

- Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search. The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even while searching for an available space.



This indicator lamp comes on to confirm the selection.

Parking space search

- You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search stops over this limit. The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

i For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

i If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "OK" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**", accompanied by the "**STOP**" sign and an audible signal.

Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

► To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.

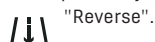
The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the "**Manoeuvre under way**" onscreen message and an accompanying audible signal.

Reversing is indicated by this message: "**Release the steering wheel, reverse**".

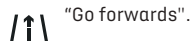
The Reversing camera or 360 Vision and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the area immediately surrounding your vehicle during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting "parallel" entry and exit parking manoeuvres, and for all "bay" entry manoeuvres. These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:



"Reverse".



"Go forwards".

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress (green).



Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must resume control of the vehicle).

The maximum speeds during manoeuvres are indicated by these symbols:



5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.



3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.). Risk of injury!

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor the traffic, especially vehicles coming towards you.

The driver should check that no objects or people are obstructing the vehicle's path.

i The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the terrain.

In shady areas, or in inadequate sunlight or lighting conditions, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or automatically by the system.

Interruption by the driver:

- taking over control of the steering.

- activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
- unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- switching off the ignition.

Interruption by the system:

- vehicle exceeding the speed limit of 5 mph (7 km/h) during parking space entry manoeuvres, or 3 mph (5 km/h) during parking space exit manoeuvres.
- activation of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
- opening of a door or the boot.
- engine stall.
- system malfunction.

- after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.

Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.

The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen.

A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

 The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this warning lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.

The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.

 When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.

When entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered, because the width of the lane is insufficient.
- The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp bend.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

Malfunctions

 When the function is not activated, the temporary flashing of this indicator lamp and an audible signal indicate a system malfunction.

If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the indicator lamp goes off.

 If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during use, indicated by one of these warning lamps coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.

In the event of a malfunction, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS PARK PILOT

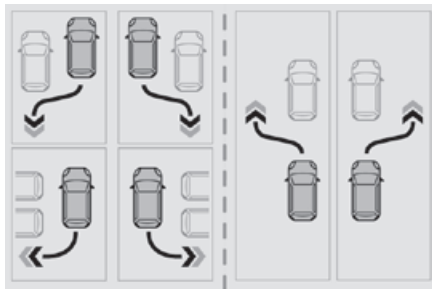
Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance for vehicles fitted with the EAT8 automatic gearbox: it detects a free "parallel" or "bay" parking space and then operates the vehicle, parking it with no need for driver intervention. It also allows you to drive out of a "parallel parking" space automatically.

The system controls the steering, direction, acceleration and braking. The system measures

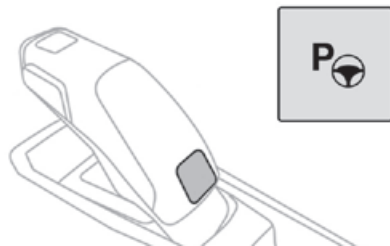
the available parking spaces and calculates the distances to obstacles using 12 ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.

To help the driver monitor the successful completion of the manoeuvre, the system automatically displays the Reversing camera or 360 Vision and activates the parking sensors.



To initiate parking assistance when approaching a parking area:

- Reduce the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).



- Press the button on the gear selector or, on the touch screen, select **Driving / Vehicle** > **DS PARK PILOT**.



Activating the system deactivates Blind Spot Detection.

Sequence

Once the system is activated, the following steps will be performed successively:

- Select the type of manoeuvre via the touch screen.
- Search for an available space.
- Prepare for the manoeuvre.
- Perform the manoeuvre.
- Finalise the manoeuvre.



It is possible to deactivate the system at any time until the start of the manoeuvre, by pressing the red arrow in the upper left corner of the screen.



DS PARK PILOT is not always able to react automatically and appropriately due to the performance limits inherent to the system. The manoeuvre remains the responsibility of the driver, who must not leave the driving position and must never try to lock the system control button.

The driver's seat belt must remain fastened during the manoeuvre.

Choice of the type of manoeuvre and search for space

Depending on whether the vehicle has been driven or not since the ignition was switched on, the function proposes the entry to or exit from a parking space on the touch screen.

- Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.



Illumination of this lamp confirms activation.

It is possible to change the type of manoeuvre at any time, including during the available space search phase.

- Drive at a distance of 0.50 to 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, not exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space (indicated by **OK** on the display and an audible signal).



For "parallel" parking, the space must at least equal to the length of your vehicle plus 1 m.

For "bay" parking, the space must at least equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

- Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle and the **"STOP"** sign are displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

► To prepare for the manoeuvre, you must fulfil all of these instructions.

- ✓ This symbol will be displayed automatically when the instruction has been applied.

When all instructions have been validated, a new screen is displayed, indicating that you can undertake the manoeuvre.



► To undertake the manoeuvre, press this button.

► While holding down the button, gradually release the brake pedal.



The button must be held down throughout the manoeuvre.

The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of a screen with the message "**Manoeuvre under way**", accompanied by an audible signal. Reversing camera or 360 Vision and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle throughout the manoeuvre.

Performing the manoeuvre

As soon as the driver releases the brake pedal, the system automatically takes control of choosing the travel direction, forwards or reverse, acceleration, braking and the steering direction. The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress.



Manoeuvre interrupted.



Manoeuvre completed or abandoned (white arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of their vehicle).

The direction of the manoeuvre is indicated by these symbols:



Forward gear.



Reverse gear.

The central arrow is green whilst the vehicle is moving, or white to indicate the next manoeuvring direction.



Throughout the whole manoeuvre, indicated by the green "**AUTO**" symbol, the driver must hold the selector button down.



During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.). Risk of injury!



If the vehicle slows down significantly, the brake lamps may come on.

Pausing/resuming the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre can be interrupted temporarily at any time, either automatically by the system if an obstacle is detected, or by driver action. If the driver notices a hazard, they may also interrupt the manoeuvre permanently.

To suspend the manoeuvre, the driver can:

- Release the function control button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Resume control of the steering.
- Change the gearbox status (except changing to P).

The vehicle is immediately immobilised if the manoeuvre is suspended.



This is confirmed by the display of this symbol, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre suspended**".

Resuming the manoeuvre after resolving the conditions for suspending it:

- Release all controls (brake pedal, function control button, steering wheel, etc.).
- Press the function control button again.

Permanent interruption after suspending the manoeuvre:

- Depress the brake pedal and engage a gear.

Abandoning the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is abandoned in the following situations:

- No action by the driver within 30 seconds of the manoeuvre being suspended.
- Intentional application of the parking brake.

- Gearbox mode **P** engaged by the driver.
 - Driver's seat belt unfastened.
 - Opening of a door or the boot.
 - Activation of the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
 - In certain cases, when a wheel of the vehicle hits a pavement or a low obstacle.
 - Triggering of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
 - Engine stalling.
 - Sudden appearance in the field of the manoeuvre of an obstacle not detected by the system before the manoeuvre was started, with the obstacle remaining for more than 30 seconds.
 - After 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a "parallel" parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a "bay" parking space,
 - System malfunction during the manoeuvre.
- Abandoning the manoeuvre immediately triggers the vehicle's brakes and automatically deactivates the function.

 This symbol is displayed, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre abandoned**" on the touch screen.

A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

 The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel and the initial display is resumed.

The system automatically engages gearbox mode **P** after 4 seconds.

End of manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.

 This symbol is displayed, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.

 When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off and the original display is restored.

- If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre. The gearbox changes to **P** 4 seconds after completion of the manoeuvre.

- When exiting a parking space, the gearbox changes to **N** when the manoeuvre is complete. A message and symbols prompt the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

The gearbox automatically changes to mode **P** if no action is taken by the driver within 30 seconds.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which does not allow the vehicle to follow the trajectory required for parking.

- The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered because the width of the lane is insufficient.
- The system is not designed to perform parking manoeuvres on a steep slope or on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- The system may be impaired by incorrect inflation of the vehicle's tyres.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is heavily loaded can affect the distance measurements.

 Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:

- Alongside a soft shoulder (ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
- When the road surface is slippery (ice).

 Do not use the function in the presence of one of the following malfunctions:

- If a tyre is under-inflated.
- If one of the bumpers is damaged.
- If one of the cameras is faulty.
- If the brake lamps are not working.

 Do not use the function if the vehicle has been subject to one of the following modifications:

- When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
- With a non-approved towball in place.
- With snow chains fitted.
- When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
- After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).
- If the sensors have been repainted outside the dealer network.
- With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

Malfunctions



When the function is not activated, the temporary flashing of this warning lamp and an audible signal indicate a DS PARK PILOT malfunction.

If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the warning lamp goes off.



If a parking sensor malfunction, indicated by one of these warning lamps coming on, occurs during DS PARK PILOT use, the function is deactivated.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



DS AUTOMOBILES



TOTAL



DS *prefers* TOTAL

BESPOKE LUBRICANTS FOR LUXURY CARS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and DS have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to DS engines, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for servicing your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.

Compatibility of fuels



Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.



Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating

correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.

At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 55 litres (Diesel), 62 litres (petrol) or 42 litres (Hybrid).
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank. Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards 0.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.



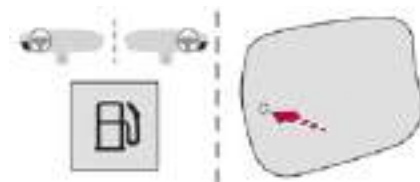
Stop & Start

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

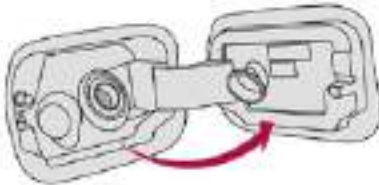
Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 10 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system. To refuel in complete safety:

► **You must switch off the engine.**

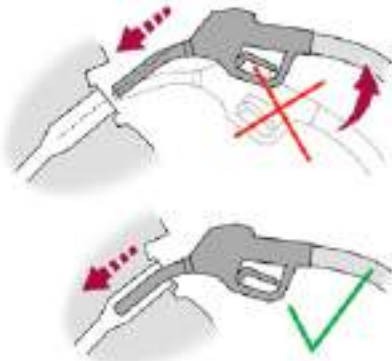


► Depending on version, press the opening button of the filler flap or press the rear edge of the filler flap to open it.



The filler cap is built into the flap.

- Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).



- Introduce the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).

- Fill the tank.

Do not continue past the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle; as this may cause malfunctions.

- Push the filler flap to close it.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

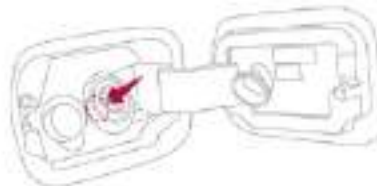
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)

This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is inserted into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

- ! It remains possible to use a fuel jerrycan to fill the tank.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Hybrid system

Electrical system

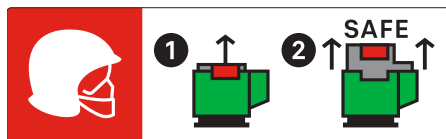
The electrical system of the hybrid system is identified by orange cables and its elements are marked with this symbol:



- ! The hybrid engine uses a voltage of between 240 V and 400 V. This system may be hot during and after switching off the ignition. Observe the warning messages on the labels in the vehicle, especially in the flap. Any work on or modification to the vehicle's electrical system (battery, connectors, orange

cables and components visible from inside or outside) is strictly prohibited due to the risk of serious burns or electrical shock that can lead to death.

In the event of a problem, always contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



! This label is intended solely for use by firefighters responding to an incident involving the vehicle and for maintenance technicians.

! In the event of an accident or impact

The electrical system or the battery may be seriously damaged in the event of an accident or impact involving the vehicle underbody.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

! In the event of exposure to a fire

Immediately exit and evacuate all passengers from the vehicle. Never attempt to fight the fire yourself - risk of electrocution!

You must immediately contact the emergency services, informing them that the incident involves a hybrid vehicle.

! When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly. Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

! High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing to clean the front compartment or the vehicle underbody.

Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

! Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!

Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery

The Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy of the vehicle. It is located under the rear seats.

The range of the battery varies depending on the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal

comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

i Battery ageing depends on several parameters, such as climatic conditions, mileage or charging frequency.

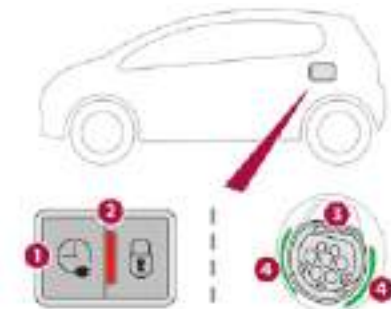
! In case of damage of the battery

It is strictly forbidden to carry out repairs on the vehicle yourself.

Do not touch liquids coming from the battery and, in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.

Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1. Deferred charge activation button

2. Nozzle locking indicator lamp
Red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
3. Charging connector
4. Light guides



Status of light guides	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting when flap is opened.
Fixed blue	Deferred charge.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging finished.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

! In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not remove or modify the charging connector - risk of fire!

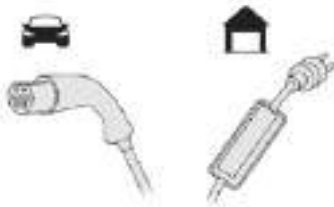
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cable

The battery can be charged using several types of cables.

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle is compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are travelling abroad, refer to the following table to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cable.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

Cable type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit 	Conventional electrical socket. 	Vehicle can be recharged overnight (6.5 hours to 7 hours). Charge limited to a maximum of 8 A.
	"Green Up" type socket. 	Vehicle can be recharged in half a day (3.5 hours to 4 hours). Charge limited to a maximum of 14 A.

Cable type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 3 charging cable 	Wallbox accelerated charging unit 	Vehicle can be recharged in 1.5 hours to 1.75 hours (with 6.6 kW charger). Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A.

i Charging times are given for information purposes only; they may vary according to different factors such as the exterior temperature or the quality of the electrical network. If the exterior temperature is below -10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly.

! Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit
 It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.
 In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

! Wallbox accelerated charging unit (mode 3)
 Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire!

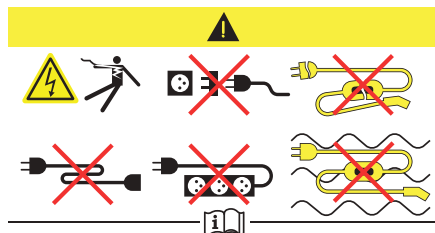
Refer to the charging unit user manual for the operating instructions.

Control unit



- POWER**
Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.
- CHARGE**

- Flashing green: charging in progress or programmed heating activated.
 Fixed green: charging complete.
- ! FAULT**
 Red: anomaly; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.
 If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly. If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker.
- If the circuit breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that your electrical system is suitable and carry out any necessary repairs.
 - If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, avoid using the charging cable and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Recommendations on the control unit label**



1. Refer to the handbook before use.
2. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
3. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
4. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
5. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
6. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
7. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
8. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
9. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.

10. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
11. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.
12. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
13. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
14. Only use this charging cable with DS AUTOMOBILES vehicles.
15. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.

Charging the traction battery (Hybrid)

For a full charge, follow the charging procedure without interrupting it, until it stops automatically. Charging can be immediate or deferred.



The deferred charge is set via the touch screen or **the MyDS** application.



For safety reasons, the engine will not start if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle connector. A warning is displayed in the instrument panel.

Charging progress is visible in the instrument panel. After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.



The charging progress can also be monitored using **the MyDS** application. For more information on **Remote features**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Precautions

Hybrid vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations for maximum electromagnetic field limits established by the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).



If you have a pacemaker or equivalent, check with a doctor about the precautions to be taken and respected or with the manufacturer of the implanted electro-medical device that its operation is guaranteed in an environment that complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.



If in doubt

During charging, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit, even for a short time.



Before charging

Depending on the context:

- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle. Use the charging cable supplied with the vehicle.

! (During charging)

- Never work under the bonnet:
- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

! After charging

Check that the charging flap is closed. Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

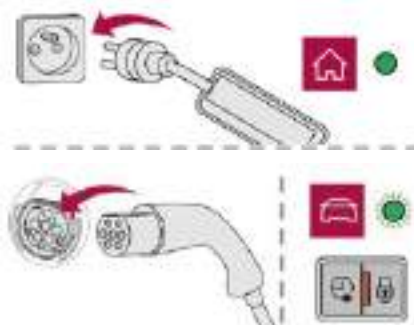
Charging procedure

Connection

- Before charging, check that the gear selector is in mode **P** and the ignition is off, otherwise charging is impossible.

- Open the charging flap by pressing the push button and make sure that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector. The light guides in the flap light up in white.

Domestic charging (mode 2)



- First, connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket. When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle in the charging connector. The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap and the flashing of the **CHARGE** indicator lamp in green on the control unit.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure ensuring that all connections are made properly. The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Accelerated charging (mode 3)



- Follow the instructions for use of the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle in the charging connector. The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap. If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure ensuring that all connections are made properly. The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- ▶ If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.
- ▶ If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator lamp in the flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- ▶ Within **30 seconds**, remove the charging nozzle.

Domestic charging (mode 2)

The end of charging is confirmed by the fixed lighting of the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green light guides in the flap.

- ▶ After disconnection, remove the protective cover from the nozzle and close the charging flap.
- ▶ Disconnect the control unit's charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging (mode 3)

The end of charging is confirmed by the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) and by the fixed lighting of the green light guides in the flap.

- ▶ After disconnection, replace the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Deferred charging

By default, charging begins when the nozzle is connected. Deferred charging can be programmed.

Settings



- ▶ In the **Hybrid** touch screen menu, select the **Charge** tab.
- ▶ Set the charging start time.
- ▶ Press **OK**.

The setting is saved in the system.



You can also programme the deferred charging function using a smartphone, via the **MyDS** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable features**, refer to the corresponding section.

Activation

- ▶ Connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.
- ▶ Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the light guides coming on in blue).



Towing device

Load distribution

- ▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it. Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum load which can be towed must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.



Use towing devices and their genuine wiring harnesses approved by the Manufacturer. It is recommended that the fitting be performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

If not fitted by a dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions.

Important: with a motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function, if a towing device is fitted outside the dealer network, it is essential to visit a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the detection system - risk of "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function failure.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated if an approved towing system is used.



Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on the vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).



Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

! Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function

To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

- Deactivate this function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu.
- Or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

Towing device with retractable ball joint

When this towing device is not in use, it is folded away underneath the rear bumper.

No tools are required to install or stow it.

! Before any intervention, the vehicle must be stationary with the parking brake applied.

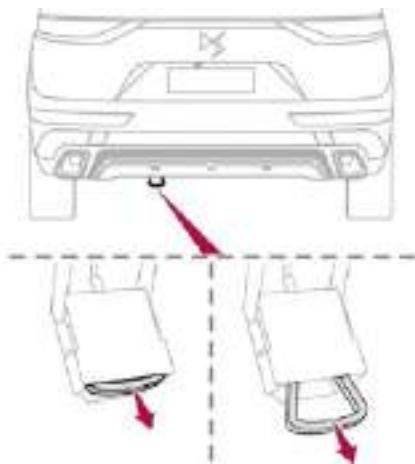
The area close to the exhaust pipe may reach a high temperature: risk of burns!

Unlocking handle

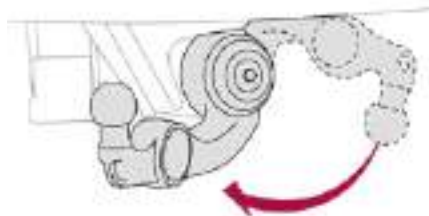
The towball is locked in either the storage position or the usage position.

The unlocking handle is behind the rear bumper, protected by a storage case.

To reach the handle:



- ▶ Pass your hand flat under the rear bumper with the palm facing upwards.
 - ▶ Insert your hand into the storage case and grasp the handle.
- To unlock the towball:
- ▶ Pull the handle firmly downwards to release it.

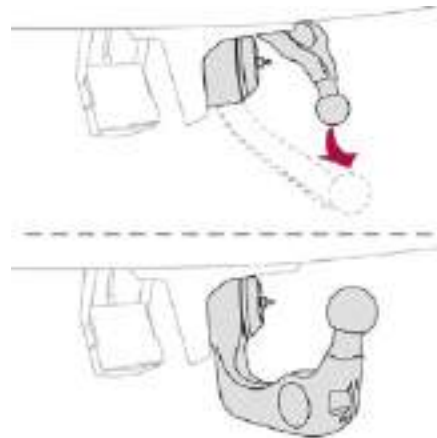


The towball hangs, hooked onto its shaft.

As soon as you release the handle, it is engaged automatically in its storage case.

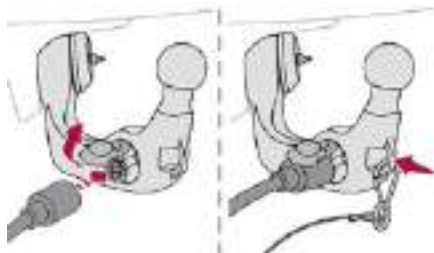
Usage position

Towball unlocked:



- ▶ Grasp the towball and rotate it while raising it until it locks into place, in the vertical position.

! The towball must be folded away when using a high-pressure washer. Do not direct the jet from less than 30 cm from the towing system.

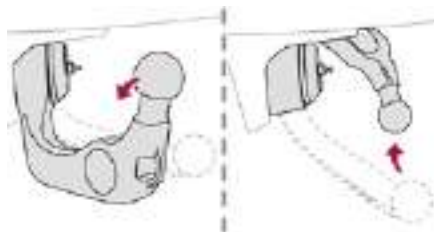


- ▶ Raise the electrical socket cover and connect the plug for the trailer or carrying device.
- ▶ Attach the trailer's safety cable to the ring in the towball elbow.

Storage position

! When the towing system is not in use, it is recommended to fold the towball away. In the event of a rear-end collision, damage to the vehicle could be worse with the towball in place.

Towball unlocked and socket disconnected:



- ▶ Grasp the towball and rotate it until it locks into place, in the horizontal position. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towing system.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used. To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient. To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Very cold climate screen

(Depending on country of sale.)

This removable protective screen prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

It consists of a first element for the upper part of the front grille and a second element for the lower part.

 For fitting / removing, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

 It is essential to remove them when:

- the exterior temperature exceeds 10°C.
- towing.
- the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

 The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

 Take account of the legislation specific to each country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

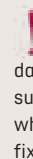
Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
235/55 R18	9 mm
235/50 R19	cannot be fitted with chains
205/55 R19	9 mm
235/45 R20	cannot be fitted with chains

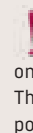
For more information on snow chains, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

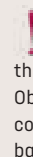
- ▶ To fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- ▶ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ▶ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

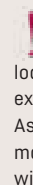
 It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

 Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

 **Hybrid vehicles**
The use of snow chains is only authorised on the **front wheels**.
The driving mode selector must be on the **4WD** position (depending on version).

Roof bars

 As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for the vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

 Maximum authorised load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): **80 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load set out in the manual supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

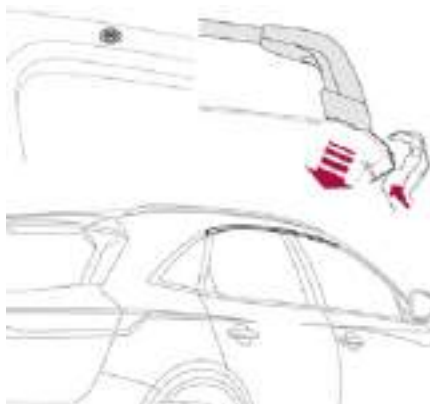
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.

The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each fixing point.

Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.

Secure the load firmly.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.

Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Bonnet

Stop & Start

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



STOP & START SYSTEM

Hybrid vehicles

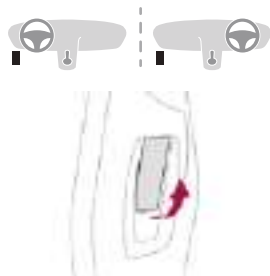
Before any work is carried out under the bonnet, it is essential to switch off the ignition and check that the **READY** indicator lamp is off in the instrument panel - risk of serious injury!

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

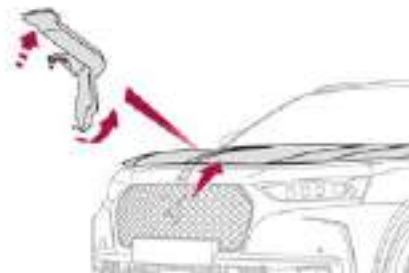
! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch with care (risk of burns), using the protected area. When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch. Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **Cooling of the engine when stopped**
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening



► **From inside:** pull the control lever, located on the left below the dashboard, towards you.



► **From the outside:** lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.

A bonnet strut opens the bonnet and holds it open.

Closing

► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.

► Check the locking.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

The engine represented is an example given for illustration purposes only.

The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.

- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.
- Degassing screw.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery / Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

10. Priming pump*
11. Degassing screw*

 The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

 Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

 Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

 Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

 The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick. It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

 In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- ▶ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ▶ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, non-fluffy cloth.
- ▶ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **A**: contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

* Depending on engine.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding under-bonnet engine compartment illustration.

- ▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ▶ Top up the level if necessary.
- ▶ After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

 Within 30 minutes of adding oil, the oil level indication in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid

 The level of this fluid should be close to the "MAX" mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

 Clean the cap before removing it to refill.
Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.

The level of this fluid should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a ready-to-use mixture.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an agent to prevent freezing must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to protect the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, jets, etc.).

 Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

 or  On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible warning and a message warning that the additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular on the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

 For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

 Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

 A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



When the particle filter is approaching saturation, this warning lamp comes on temporarily, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of filter clogging.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

 If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

 Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust while accelerating. This has no impact on the vehicle's behaviour or the environment.

 **New vehicle**
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.



After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in case of an issue, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.



Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves. When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; it is imperative to replace the tyres.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Shock absorbers



It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road-holding and braking performance. For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits



Timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, the Manufacturer has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 5,600 miles (9,000 km), **highly dependent** on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle disabled.

 For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

 Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: the vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is immobilised.

Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

 For the correct operation of the SCR system:

- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

It is possible to obtain AdBlue® from a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.



Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).



Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

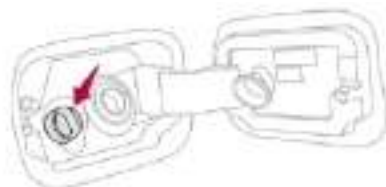
Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11 °C. Otherwise, the AdBlue® may be frozen and therefore cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue breakdown**, you must wait about 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment.**
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



- Turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
- With an AdBlue® pump: introduce the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.

! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:

- Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station. The system only registers AdBlue® top-ups of 5 litres or more.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible" – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

e Do not dispose of AdBlue® containers in the household waste.
Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you bought them.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, you must allow the vehicle to free-wheel (while being towed, on a rolling road, in an automatic car wash, or being transported by rail or sea freight, etc.).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

With manual or EAT6 automatic gearbox and electric parking brake



Release procedure

- With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.
- While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
- Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
- While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.

- Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

- While depressing the brake pedal, start the engine.

With EAT8 automatic gearbox and electric parking brake



Release procedure

- With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select mode **N** and switch off the ignition.

Within 5 seconds:

- Switch on the ignition again.
- While depressing the brake pedal, move the push selector forwards or backwards to confirm mode **N**.
- While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
- Release the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.

If the 5-second time limit is exceeded, the gearbox engages mode **P**; it is then necessary to restart the procedure.

Reverting to normal operation

- While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine.

Keyless Entry and Starting

I You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on or off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment, due to the risk of damaging electrical components.
Do not wash the vehicle in strong sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

I When washing the vehicle at an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, remove the electronic key and deactivate the "hands-free" function ("Hands-Free Tailgate Access").
When using a pressure washer, hold the lance at least 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).

Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paint (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).

If justified by the environment, clean the vehicle more frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial estates) and mud (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop if you require advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).

Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure washer to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage if they come into contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console.
Take care!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

 Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.

Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!

Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

 Use a soft sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.

Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry. Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

 Do not use a high pressure washer to clean the vehicle. Risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

 Use a high-flow hose at a temperature between 25°C and 40°C.

Sweep the jet of water across the surface to be cleaned, perpendicular to it.

Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.

It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

 Do not clean leather using unsuitable cleaning agents such as solvents, detergents, petrol or pure alcohol. When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

 Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus. Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out. Clean leather using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product. Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

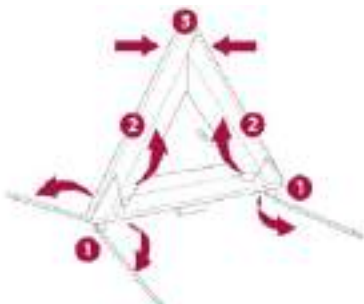
Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.

- After opening the tailgate, release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn to the left.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above. For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

- Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

Before priming, at least 5 litres of Diesel fuel must be added to the tank.

For more information on **Refuelling and Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For all versions other than BlueHDi, the components are located in the engine compartment; they can be found under the removable cover.

For more information about the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi engines

- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- Operate the starter motor to start the engine. If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

- Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
- Loosen the degassing bolt.
- Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
- Retighten the degassing bolt.
- Operate the starter motor until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.

- Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

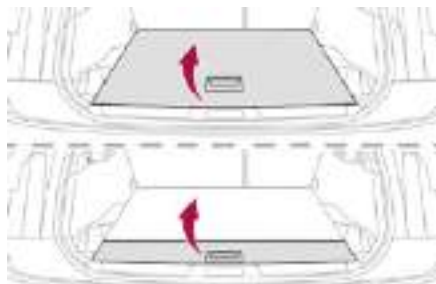
Tool kit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

Access to the tools



The tool kit is stored in the boot, under the floor.

To access it:

Versions with 2-position boot floor:

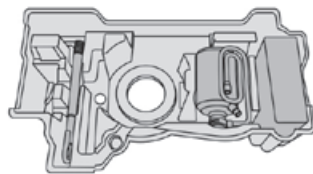
- Open the boot.
- Place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.
- Raise the floor past the two retractable stops.
- Place the floor on these two stops to hold it up.

Versions with hinged boot carpet:

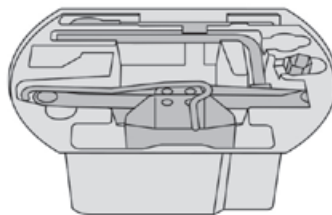
- Open the boot.

- Unfold the hinged boot carpet by pulling the handle until it is fully opened.

Versions with a temporary puncture repair kit



Versions with a spare wheel



! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.

Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.

Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

List of tools

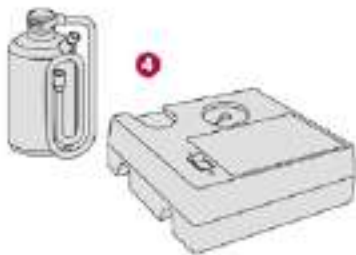


1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)

2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Towing eye and tool to open the rear protective cover

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

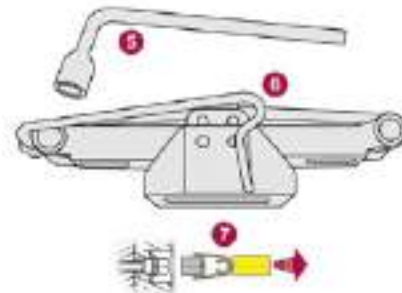
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with a cartridge of sealant and a speed limit sticker
For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap remover (depending on equipment)
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair procedure

Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

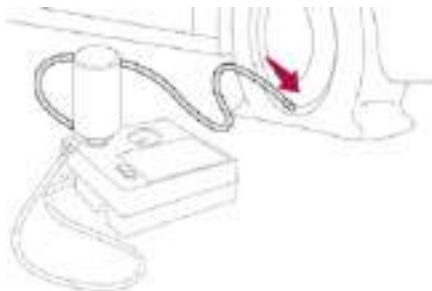
- ▶ Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country of driving.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



- Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



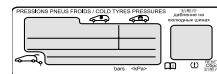
- Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "0".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



- Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- Switch on the ignition.

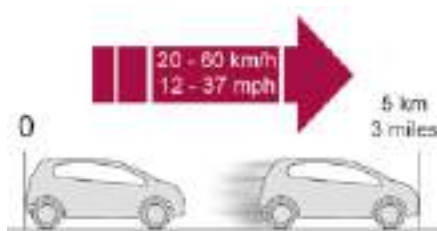


- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Move the switch to position "0".
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove the kit.
- Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

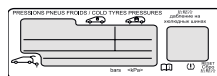
! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "0".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact

a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "0".
- Remove the kit and stow it.

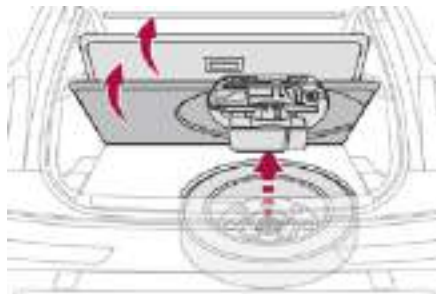
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to the spare wheel

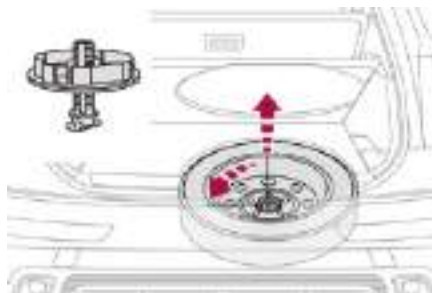


The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.

If you need access to the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

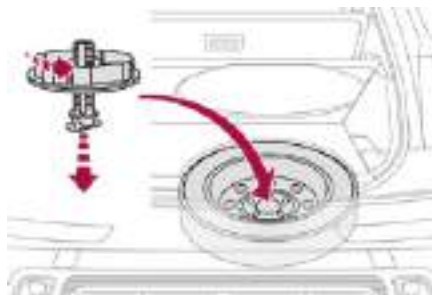
i Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel.
In some countries, it is a 'space saver' wheel.

Removing the spare wheel



- ▶ Slacken the central nut.
- ▶ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ▶ Lift the spare wheel towards the back of the boot.
- ▶ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



- ▶ Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.

- ▶ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ▶ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ▶ Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- ▶ Put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Removing a wheel

! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

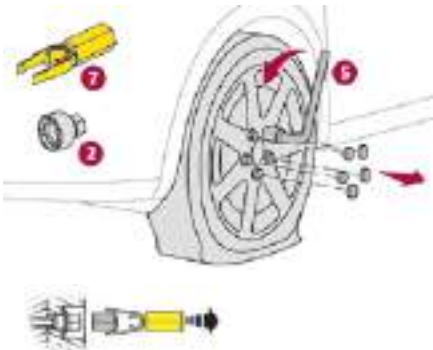
With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition. Check for the fixed illumination of the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel. The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

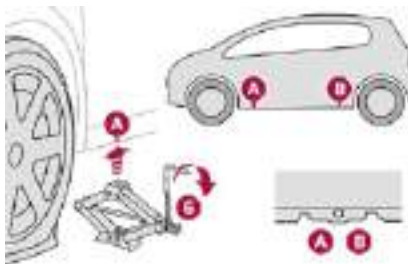
Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

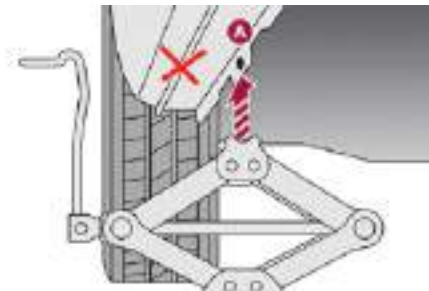
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



- To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool 7 (alloy wheels).
- Fit security socket 2 on wheelbrace 5 to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 5 only.



- Place the foot of jack 6 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front A or rear B jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- Extend jack 6 until its head comes into contact with jacking point A or B; contact area A or B on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points A or B under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



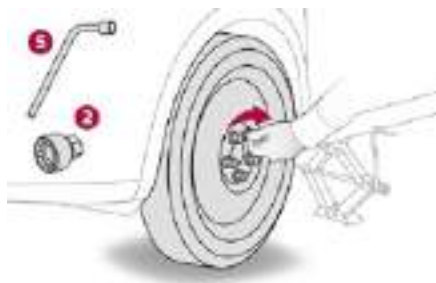
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

Fitting a wheel



i Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

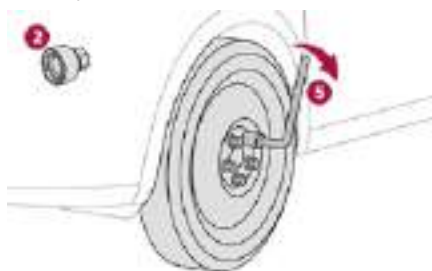
If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheels, the washers do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



- ▶ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ▶ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- ▶ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ▶ Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- ▶ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- ▶ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ▶ Store the tools.

After changing a wheel

Store the punctured wheel in the boot or, depending on version, remove the central cover first to store it beneath the floor in place of the spare wheel.



! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel

Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
- Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp. Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

After changing a bulb

To refit, carry out the operations in reverse order to removal.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps / lamps are:

- Full LED technology headlamps.
- Front foglamps.
- Offset daytime running lamps.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.
- Side spotlamps.
- Tailgate rear lamps.
- Third brake lamp.
- Number plate lamps.

! For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Front lamps

Model with "Full LED" technology headlamps



1. Direction indicators (LED)
2. Dipped / main beam headlamps (LED)
3. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LED)
4. Foglamps (LED)
5. Additional lamps (LED)

Model with halogen and Xenon headlamps



1. Dipped beam / main beam headlamps (D5S 25W)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Additional main beam headlamps (H7)
4. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LED)
5. Foglamps (LED)

Opening the bonnet / Accessing the bulbs

With the engine warm, proceed with caution - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!



Risk of electrocution

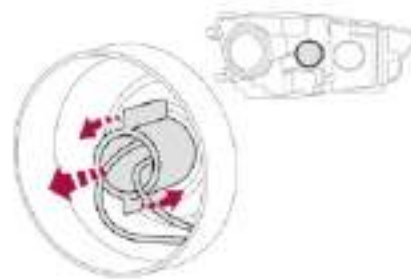
Xenon bulbs (D5S) must be replaced by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Halogen bulbs (Hx)

To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Direction indicators

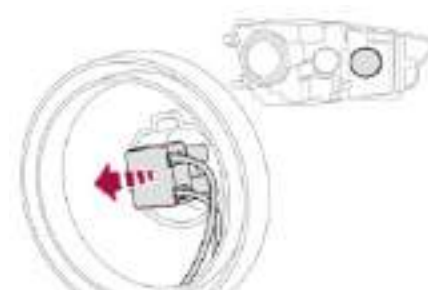
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



- ▶ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Pull the bulb and bulb holder assembly backwards.
- ▶ Replace the bulb.

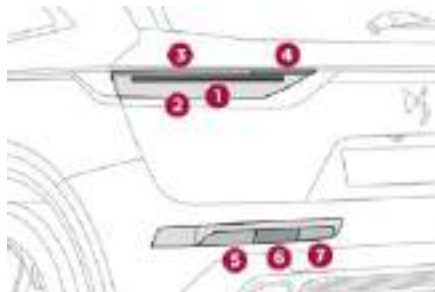
Amber coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Additional main beam headlamps



- ▶ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ▶ Pull the connector backward: the bulb is detached from the reflector.
- ▶ Disconnect the connector.
- ▶ Replace the bulb.

Rear lamps



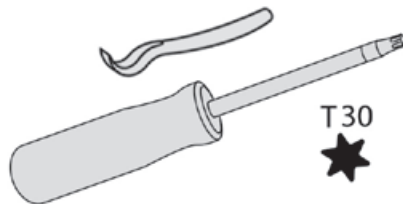
Main lamps

1. Brake lamps (LED)
2. Sidelamps (LED)
3. Direction indicators (LED)
4. Reversing lamps (LED)

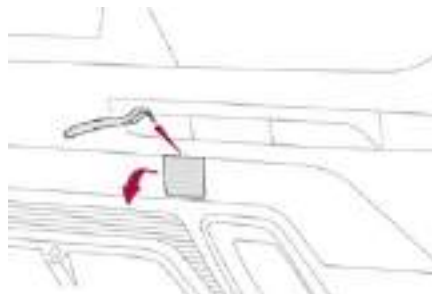
Secondary lamp cluster

5. Brake lamps / sidelamps reminder (P21/5W)
6. Direction indicators reminder (PY21W)
7. Foglamps (W16W)

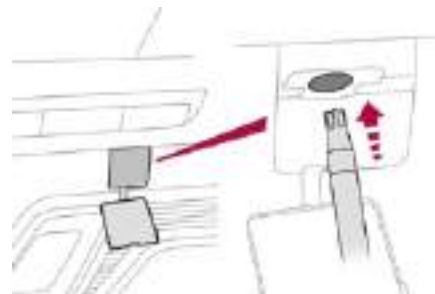
Access to the secondary lamp cluster



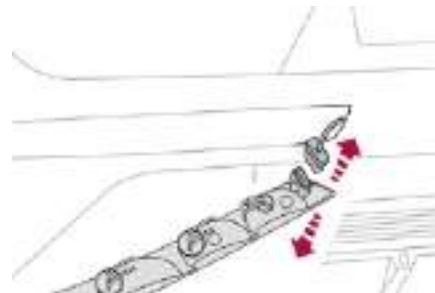
Tools required: rear protective cover opening tool (tool kit) and Torx T30 screwdriver (not supplied).



- Using the opening tool, unclip the cover of the access flap on the rear screw thread of the towing eye, then pull it towards you.



- Insert the screwdriver head diagonally in the cylindrical guide until you reach the lamp unit fixing bolt.
- Slacken the bolt by about 10 turns then pull the lamp unit to release it from the bumper.



- Disconnect the harness.



For each lamp:

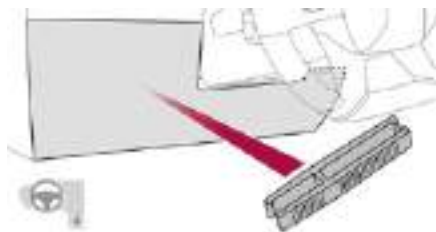
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ▶ Remove the bulb and replace it.

Changing a fuse

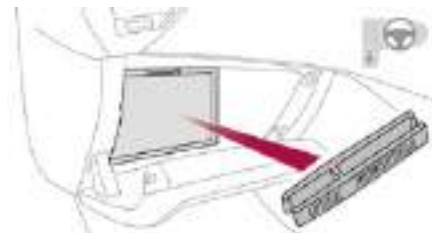
Accessing the tools

The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.

Depending on version:



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ▶ Remove the cover completely.
- ▶ Take the tweezers from their housing.



- ▶ Open the glove box.
- ▶ Press on the central handle of the fusebox cover.
- ▶ Lower the cover completely.
- ▶ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ▶ Identify the cause of the fault and fix it.
- ▶ Stop all power consumption.
- ▶ Immobilise the vehicle and switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.

To replace a fuse, it is essential to:

- ▶ Use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.

- ▶ Always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions - risk of fire! If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a dealer or from a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

	
Good	Failed
	
Tweezers	

i Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Fuses in the dashboard

The fusebox is located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

To access the fuses, follow the same procedure as that described for accessing the tool kit for changing fuses.

For more information on **Access to the tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fuse tables

Box 1

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F3	5 A	Rear USB socket.
F4	15 A	Horn.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F6	20 A	Screenwash pump.
F14	5 A	Emergency and assistance calls, alarm.
F27	5 A	Additional heating/ventilation remote control receiver.
F29	20 A	Touch screen audio system.
F31	15 A	Front 12 V socket.
F32	15 A	12 V socket in boot.

Box 2

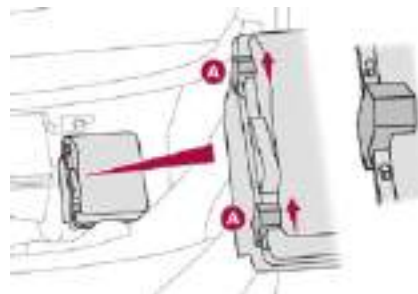
Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40 A	Heated rear screen.
F4	15 A	Electric windows and exterior mirrors.
F6	25 A	Reversing lamps.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F10	15 A	Air conditioning additional blower.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Accessing the fuses



- ▶ Release the two latches **A**.
- ▶ Remove the cover.
- ▶ Replace the fuse.
- ▶ When you have finished, close the cover carefully, then engage the two latches **A** to ensure that the fusebox is properly sealed.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

► Unlock the bonnet by activating the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.

► Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Starting using another battery

If your vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

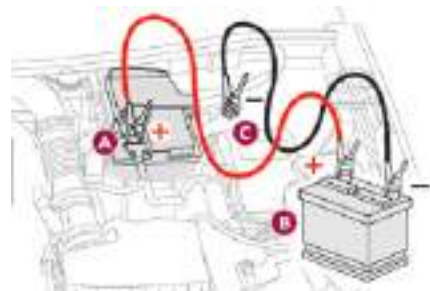
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.). Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.

► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.

- ▶ Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ▶ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ▶ Wait for it to return to idle.
 - ▶ Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
 - ▶ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
 - ▶ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Drive cautiously during the first 30 minutes after starting the engine.

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- using the vehicle mainly for short journeys;
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

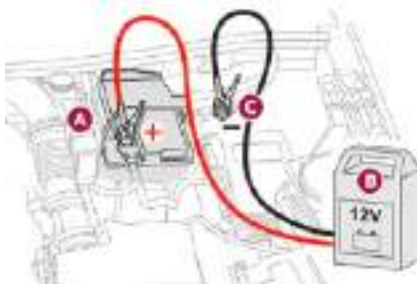
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

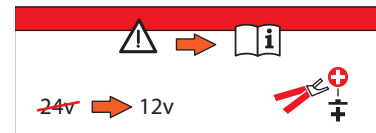
i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ▶ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.

- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ▶ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

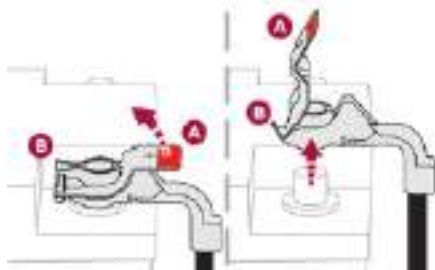
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ▶ Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

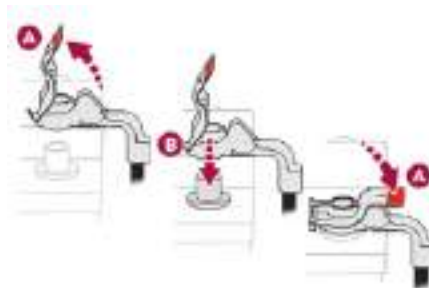
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- ▶ Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Raise lever **A** fully.
- ▶ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Push clamp **B** fully down.
- ▶ Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
- ▶ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

After reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reset certain equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof and electric sun blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

i After reconnection of the battery, the "Collision risk detection system fault" message is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Accessories batteries (Hybrid)

The hybrid system has two accessory batteries: one at the front and one at the rear of the vehicle.

e The batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling batteries.

All operations on the batteries must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

For the replacement of batteries, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Accessing the batteries

Front

The front battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- Release the bonnet by operating the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.

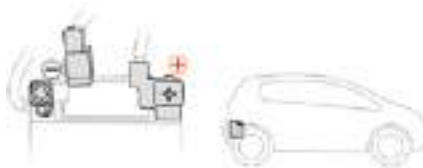
(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Rear

The rear battery is located in the boot.

To reach the battery:



- Lift the boot floor.

(+) Positive terminal, protected by a red plastic cover.

(-) Negative terminal with a black quick-release connector.

Charging the front battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the front battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the front battery:

- using the vehicle mainly for short journeys;
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

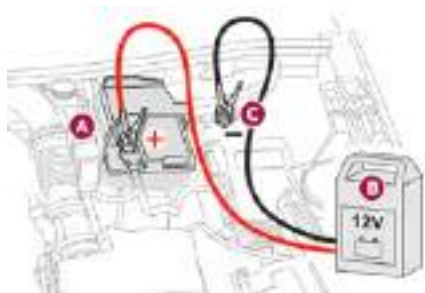
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's front battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnection / reconnection of the batteries

Procedure for disconnecting / reconnecting the batteries in the event of long-term immobilisation of the vehicle.

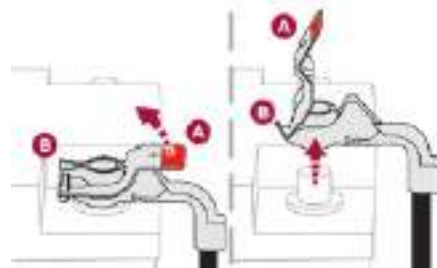
Before disconnecting the batteries:

- Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- Switch off the ignition and wait for the READY indicator lamp to go out.
- Observe a waiting time of 4 minutes.

Disconnection

! Never reverse the order of the disconnection steps - risk of irreversible damage!

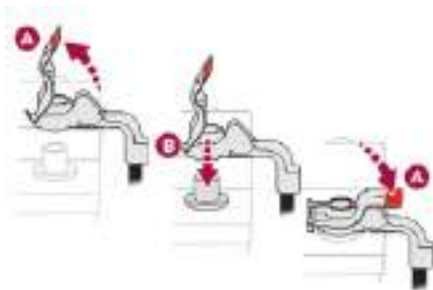
- Disconnect the (-) terminal of the rear battery using the black quick-release connector.



- Disconnect the (+) terminal of the front battery by disconnecting the red quick-release clamp:
 - Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
 - Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnection

! Never reverse the order of the reconnection steps - risk of irreversible damage!



- Connect the **(+)** terminal of the front battery by connecting the red quick-release clamp:

- Raise lever **A** fully.
 - Refit the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
 - Push clamp **B** fully down.
 - Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
- Connect terminal **(-)** to the rear battery using the black quick-release terminal connector.

After reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reset certain equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof and electric sun blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Towing the vehicle

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called if:

- broken down on a motorway or main road;
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
- towing with only two wheels on the ground;
- four-wheel drive vehicle;
- no approved towbar available.

**Hybrid vehicles**

Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**, then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator lamp off).

Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

Use the towing eye **only** to free the vehicle where it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine / gearbox)gearbox	Font wheels on the ground	Rear wheels on the ground	Flatbed	4 wheels on the ground with towbar
Internal combustion / Manual				
Internal combustion / Automatic				
Hybrid 2WD				
Hybrid 4WD				

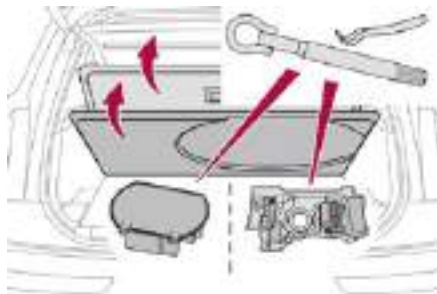
2WD: 2-wheel drive.

4WD: 4-wheel drive.



In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Access to the tools

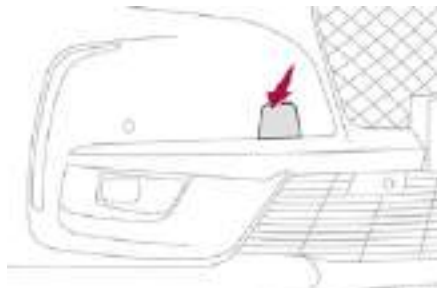


The opening tool for the rear protective cover is secured to the towing eye.

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



- Unclip the cover by pressing at its top left-hand corner.

- Release the cover.
- To be towed:
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
 - Install the towbar.
 - Put the gearbox into neutral.

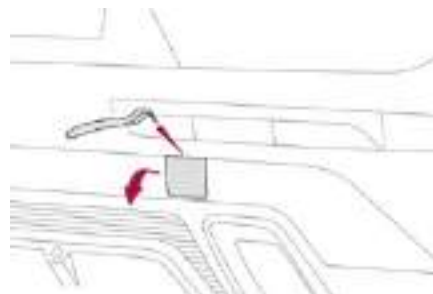
! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- Unclip the cover, using the tool fixed on the towing eye.
- To tow:
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
 - Install the towbar.
 - Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
 - Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

 The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures. These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

 When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

 Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Engines and towed loads - Petrol

Engines	1.6 THP 150	1.6 THP 165	PureTech 180 Automatic	PureTech 225 Automatic
Gearboxes	EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)	EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	EP6FDTMD - AT6III	EP6FDTM - AT6III	EP6FADTXD - ATN8	EP6FADTX - ATN8
Model codes J...	45GXV-C1A000	45GYV-C1A000	45GFR-C1B000	45GCR-C1B000
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110	121	133	165
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	1,550	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	25	25	68	68

Engines	PureTech 130 Manual	PureTech 180 Automatic	PureTech 225 Automatic
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	EB2ADTS - MB6	EP6FADTXD - ATN8	EP6FADTX - ATN8
Model codes J...	RHNSJ	45GFR	45GGR
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	133	165
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,315	1,550	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	695	750	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	59	68	68

Engines and towed loads - Diesel

Engines	BlueHDi 130 Manual	BlueHDi 130 Manual Drive Efficiency	2.0 HDi 180 S&S	BlueHDi 180 Automatic
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	DV5RC - ML6C	DV5RC - ML6C	DW10FCM - AMN8	DW10FC - AMN8
Model codes J...	CYHZJ-C2B000	CYHZJ-C2F000	JEHZN-C2B000	JEHZR-C2B000 JEHZR-C2B002*
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96	130	130
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,500	650	1,550	1,550/1,850*
Unbraked trailer (kg)	745	650	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	64	32	68	68/80*

* Vehicles without sunroof.

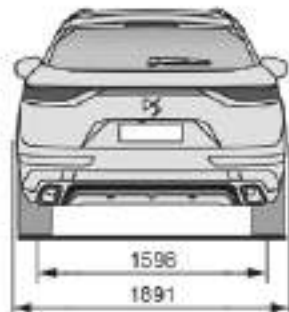
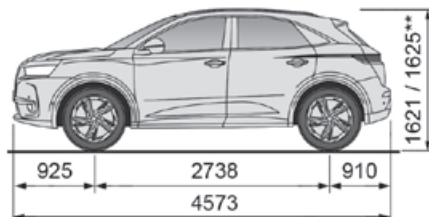
Engines	BlueHDi 130 Automatic	BlueHDi 130 Automatic Drive Efficiency
Gearboxes	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	DV5RC - ATN8	DV5RC - ATN8
Model codes J...	CYHZR	CYHZR
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,430	850
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	650
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	64	34

Engine and towed loads - Hybrid

Petrol engine	PureTech 180 Automatic	PureTech 200 Automatic
Gearbox	e-EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	e-EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	EP6FADTXHPD	EP6FADTXHPA
Model codes J...	455GQ (2WD)	45GB (4WD)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	132	147
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,280	1,210
Unbraked trailer (kg)	745	745
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	-	-
Electric motor(s)		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	80	Front: 80 Rear: 80
Battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts AC)	240-400	240-400
Max. consumption (kWh)	13.2	13.2
Combined power (kW)	165	220

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

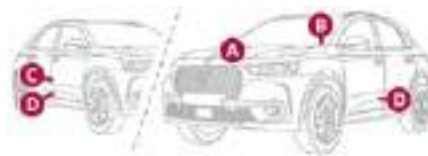


* Mirrors folded in.

** Version with longitudinal bars.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

Stamped on the chassis.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Engraved on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

Affixed to the right-hand door.

Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres / paint code label.

Affixed to the driver's door.

Bears the following information about the tyres:

- tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- spare tyre pressure.

Also indicates the paint colour code.

DS CONNECT RADIO



Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).

- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps

⏻ With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on. Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages

either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.

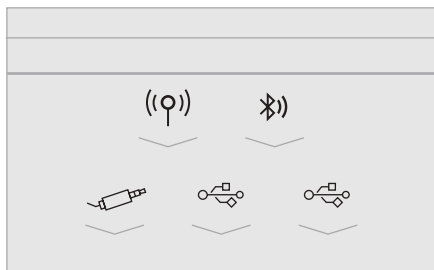
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
- Privacy status information.
- Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB Memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiances, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

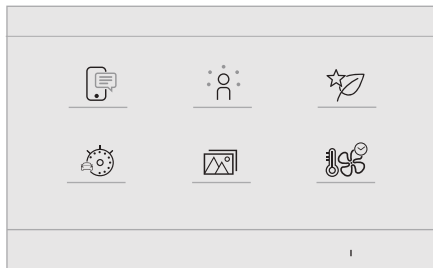
Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

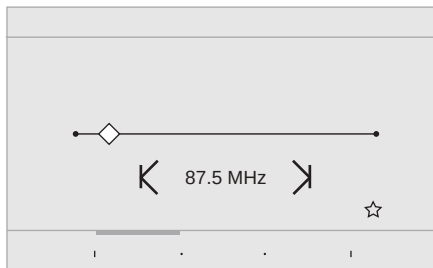
Menus

Applications



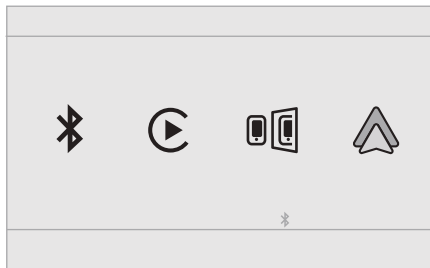
 Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



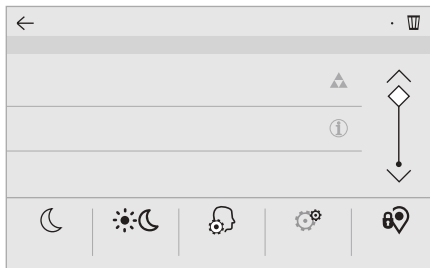
 Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



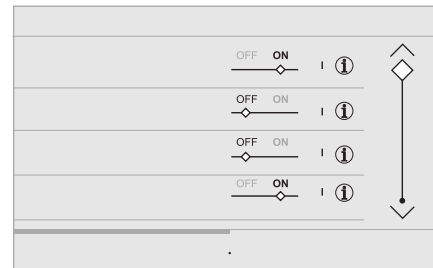
 Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.
Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



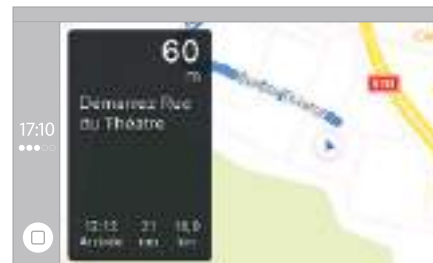
 Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



 Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff, .gif, .jpg/jpeg, .bmp and .png.

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

 Press "**Photos**".

 Select a folder.

 Select an image to view.

 Press this button to display the details of the photo.

 Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

 Press "SMS".

 Select the "SMS" tab.

 Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

 Press this button to search and select a recipient.

 Select the "Quick messages" tab.

 Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

 Press this button to write a new message.

 Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

 Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

 Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

 Press this button to write a new message.

 Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

  Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

 Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

 Press the frequency.

 Press the frequency.

 Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

 Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

☒ Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.



RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not

cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

☒ Activate/deactivate "**News**".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.

In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality

according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

 Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

 Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to

the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

 Press in the shaded area to confirm.

 If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

 If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

 Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

 Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings. First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button. Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

 Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.

The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

 The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.

As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

 The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

 Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

 Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

 If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

 Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

 On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

 When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

 The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

 On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

 The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

 Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

 When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

 From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.

 Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the

compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

 The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

 Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Press **"Bluetooth search"**.
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

 Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

 The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

 The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "Details" button for a paired device.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an

incoming call.



And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Or press and hold



the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or



Press and hold



the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

-  Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.
-  Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

-  Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.
- OK** Press "**OK**" to save.

-  Press the back arrow to confirm.
-  Press this button to activate the profile.
-  Press the back arrow again to confirm.

-  Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **Brightness**.

-  Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).



- Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
-  Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.
-  Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".

- "**Only data sharing**"
- "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"



- Press the back arrow to confirm.



- Press **Settings** to display the main page.



- Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.



- Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

-  Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).



- Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".



- Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



- Select "**Animated transitions**".



- Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language



- Press **Settings** to display the main page.



- Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.



- Select "**Language**" to change the language.



- Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to set the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.



The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to set the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format for the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory

stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

- Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

- Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

- Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.

- Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
- Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

- Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

- Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

- Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

- Reduce ambient noise (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

- Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

- Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

- Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

DS CONNECT NAV



GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).

- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

i System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website. The update procedure is also available on the website.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps

⏻ With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on. Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers. All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

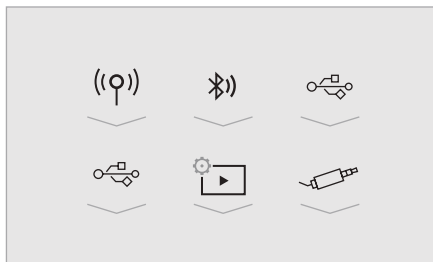
Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).

- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice control:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice control for smartphone or CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (availability depending on country), Android Auto via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.

Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

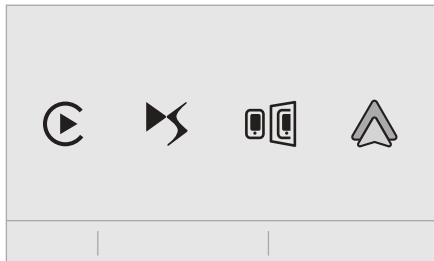
Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

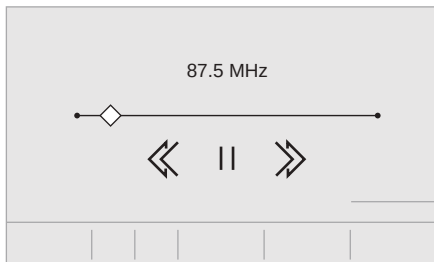
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications



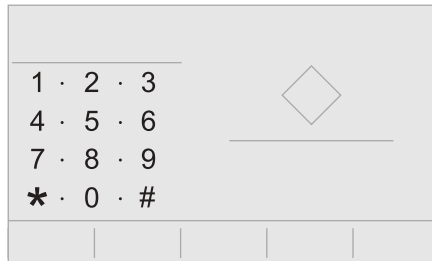
 Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available in some countries) or Android Auto. Check the status of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



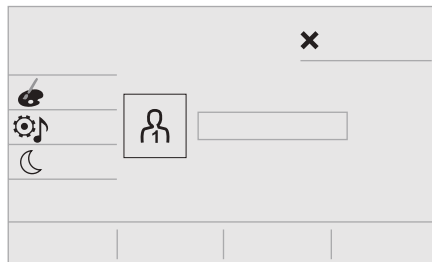
 Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



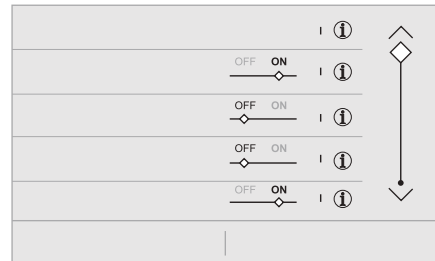
 Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



 Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle



 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls



Voice commands:

Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist Madonna"

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller"



The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

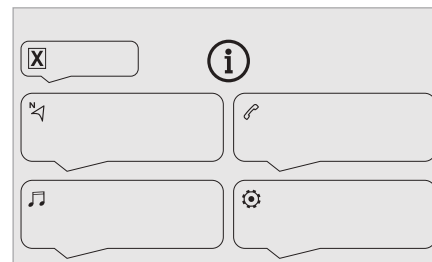
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

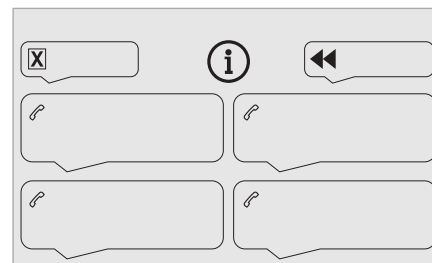
Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step.

There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands



Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert

Select user 1/ Select profile John

Increase temperature

Decrease temperature



Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands



Voice commands

Navigate home

Navigate to work

Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club

Navigate to contact, John Miller

Navigate to address 11 regent street, London



Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection.

For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".

To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance

Tell me the remaining time

Tell me the arrival time

Stop route guidance



Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".



Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination

Show nearby POI petrol station

Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London

Navigate to POI petrol station along the route



Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".

To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

i Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands



Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...



Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".



Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2

Tune to 98.5 FM

Tune to preset number five



Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".



Voice commands

What's playing?



Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude

Play artist Madonna

Play album Thriller



Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands



If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.



Voice commands

Call David Miller*

Call voicemail*

Display calls*



Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".

To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

 If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

 The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action

and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving

Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

 The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press "**Search...**".

 Enter an address or key words for your destination.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

 Before you can use the navigation feature, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), and the "**Number**" on the virtual keypad, or select an address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

 If you do not confirm the house number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".

Then



Select the **Country**



Select the keyboard "language".



Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or



Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

 Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.



Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**Home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**"

tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:



You can only select this method in order to use the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use

the DS CONNECT BOX solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Search**".

Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change "Database".

 Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).

 Press the back arrow to confirm.

 Enter an address or key words for your destination (POI).

OK Press "**OK**" to start the search.

 Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.

Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen. Select the destination by pressing on the map.

 Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
 Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or

 Press this button to save the displayed address.

 A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen. Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.

 Press this button to display the world map. Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.

 Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.

 A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:

DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.

DD for: Degrees, Decimals.

 Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or

 Press this button to save the displayed address.

OR

 Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

And

 Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

 Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



If you use the DS CONNECT BOX solution, the system is automatically connected to the internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user



For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication

process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.



This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "**Notifications**".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the

vehicle's system.



Usage restrictions:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
 - With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only available with a USB connection.
- The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**System configuration**".



Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR



Press "**Notifications**".



Press "**Private mode**".

THEN



Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Only data sharing**".
- "**Sharing data and vehicle position**".

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select the "**Map**" tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".

These settings must be configured for each profile.



Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.



Select the "**Alerts**" tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Advise of car park nearby**".
- "**Filling station alert**".
- "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure alerts.
- "**Give an audible warning**".
- "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
- "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.



The "Notifications", in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.



Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.



When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"



To send information about danger zones, select the option: **Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).



Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press this button to display the list of services.

 Press "**POI on map**" to display the list of points of interest.

 Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

 Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

 Press this button to display a secondary page.

 Select the "**Settings**" tab.

 Select the desired fuel.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press this button to display the list of services.

 Press "**POI on map**" to display the list of points of interest.

 Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

 Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

 Press this button to display a secondary page.

 Select the "**Settings**" tab.

 Select the desired connector type.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press this button to display the list of services.

 Select "**View map**".

 Select "**Weather**".

 Press this button to display basic information.

 Press this button to display detailed weather information.

 The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB ports

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB ports compatible with **CarPlay**[®], **MirrorLink**[™] or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

 For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

 Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's MirrorLinkCarPlay[®], [™] or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay[®] technology, the CarPlay[®] function must first be activated on the smartphone.

In all cases, the smartphone must be unlocked, to enable the communication process between the smartphone and the system to function. As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system.**

Connectivity

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay**[®], **MirrorLink**[™] or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable. Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable. From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires a compatible smartphone and compatible applications. You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).



When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable. From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "MirrorLink™" function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Android Auto smartphone connection



Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play". The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

 There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.

Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.

 Select the country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

 Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

 The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

 Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

 Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

 Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.

 Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

 Depending on the type of smartphone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

 The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

 Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

 Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

 Select a network.

 Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

 The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

 Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.
And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

 Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".

 Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

 Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

 Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

 Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band...", displayed at the bottom right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

☒ Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

☒ Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

☒ Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "Band ..." at the top centre of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "FM-DAB auto follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

☒ Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

☒ Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "OK".

i If "FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("FM-DAB" option shaded), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".

Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/
Depending on country.

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.



Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files. The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? ; ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

 The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

 Select the system name in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or

 Select **"Search"**.
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

 Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

 The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation, after

first activating smartphone connection sharing.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

 The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

 The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
 Press the "Details" button.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
 Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

 Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

 Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

 Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

 Make a long press

 on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

 Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

 Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

 Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Or press and hold



the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or



Press and hold



the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.



Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).



Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).



Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.



The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.



Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system. Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.



Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.



The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) and the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**". The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to reset the selected profile.



Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: **Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.



Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to set the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format for the date.



Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to set the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.



Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.

The address is not recognised.

- Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search..." button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.

The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).

- Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I do not receive "Danger zone" alerts.

You have not subscribed to the online services option.

- If you have subscribed to the option:
- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.

The POIs have not been selected.

- Set the zoom level to 600 ft (200 m) or select POIs in the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.

The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

- Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

- Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (Without, Manual or Automatic).

I receive a warning about a "Danger area" that is not on my route.

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

- Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

- Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

- Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

My navigation is no longer connected.

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

- Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

- Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check

whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.

This is perfectly normal.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).

Some contacts are duplicated in the list.

The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.

► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

The system does not receive SMS.

SMS text messages cannot be sent to the system in Bluetooth mode.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

- Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

- In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

- Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.

- Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

180° rear vision 146
 360 Vision 144, 146

A

ABS 83
 Accessories 80
 Active Safety Brake 133–135
 Active Scan Suspension 111
 Active suspension 111
 AdBlue® 19, 172
 AdBlue® tank 174
 Additive, Diesel 170–171
 Adjusting headlamps 76
 Adjusting head restraints 43
 Adjusting seat 43–44
 Adjusting the air distribution 55–56
 Adjusting the air flow 53, 55–56
 Adjusting the date 216, 239
 Adjusting the height and reach
 of the steering wheel 47
 Adjusting the seat angle 44
 Adjusting the seat belt height 86
 Adjusting the temperature 53–54, 56
 Adjusting the time 23, 216, 239
 Advanced Traction Control 85
 Advice on care and maintenance 158, 175
 Advice on driving 7, 101
 Airbags 88–91
 Airbags, curtain 89–90
 Airbags, front 88–89, 92

Airbags, lateral 89–90
 Air conditioning 52–53
 Air conditioning, automatic 57
 Air conditioning, digital 54
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 54
 Air conditioning, manual 53, 55
 Air intake 55–56
 Air vents 51
 Alarm 37–38
 Amplifier, audio 62
 Android Auto connection 230
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 83
 Antitheft / Immobiliser 31, 102
 Apple CarPlay connection 212, 230
 Applications 231
 Armrest, front 63
 Armrest, rear 65
 Assistance call 81
 Assistance, emergency braking 83, 134
 Audible warning 81
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 210, 234

B

Battery 165
 Battery, 12 V 171, 190–194
 Battery, ancillaries 193
 Battery, charging 157, 161, 191, 193–194
 Battery, remote control 32, 59
 Blanking screen (snow shield) 165
 Blind 40–41

Blind spot monitoring system, active 142
 Blind spot sensors 140–142
 BlueHdi 19, 170, 177
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 213, 235–236
 Bluetooth (telephone) 213–214, 235–236
 Bodywork 176
 Bonnet 167–168
 Boot 33–34, 36, 67
 Brake discs 172
 Brake lamps 187
 Brakes 172
 Braking 111
 Braking assistance system 83
 Braking, automatic emergency 133–135
 Braking, dynamic emergency 105–106
 Brightness 215
 Bulbs 186
 Bulbs (changing) 185, 187

C

Cable, audio 234
 Cable, Jack 234
 Capacity, fuel tank 156
 Care of the bodywork 176
 CD 210
 CD, MP3 210
 Central locking 30
 Changing a bulb 185, 187
 Changing a fuse 188–189
 Changing a wheel 178, 181

Changing a wiper blade 78
 Changing the remote control battery 32
 Charger, induction 62
 Charger, wireless 62
 CHECK 21
 Checking the engine oil level 18
 Checking the levels 169–170
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 179, 181
 Checks 168, 171–172
 Checks, routine 171–172
 Child lock 99–100
 Children 87, 93, 95–96, 99
 Children (safety) 99
 Child seats 87, 90–93
 Child seats, conventional 92–93
 Child seats, i-Size 99
 Child seats, ISOFIX 95–96
 Cigar lighter 61
 Cleaning (advice) 158, 175–176
 Clock 23
 Closing the boot 29, 33
 Closing the doors 29–30
 Collision Risk Alert 133–134
 Comfort mode 113
 Configuration, vehicle 24–25
 Connected applications 231
 Connection, Bluetooth 213–214, 231, 235–236
 Connection, MirrorLink 212, 230
 Connection, Wi-Fi network 232
 Connectivity 229
 Consumption figures 25
 Container, AdBlue® 173
 Control, emergency boot release 33

Control, emergency door 31
 Control, heated seats 46–47
 Controls, steering mounted 107–110
 Control stalk, lighting 68, 70
 Control stalk, wipers 76–77, 79
 Control unit 159–160, 162
 Courtesy lamp, front 64
 Courtesy lamps 64
 Cover, load space 66
 Cruise control 121, 123–125
 Cruise control, adaptive 125
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition 121
 Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 121
 Cup holder 60

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) -
 Digital radio 210, 233
 Date (setting) 216, 239
 Daytime running lamps 69, 186
 Deactivating the passenger airbag 88, 91–92
 Deadlocking 28–29
 Defrosting 57
 Defrosting, front 57
 Demisting 57
 Demisting, front 57
 Demisting, rear 57
 Demisting, rear screen 57
 Dial 9
 Dials and gauges 9–10

Dimensions 204
 Dipstick 18, 169
 Direction indicators 70, 185–187
 Display screen, instrument panel 9, 114
 Door pockets 60
 Doors 33
 Driver's attention warning 135–136
 Driving 42–43, 101
 Driving aids camera (warnings) 118
 Driving aids (recommendations) 118
 Driving economically 7
 Driving modes 112
 Driving positions (storing) 45
 DS Park Pilot 150
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) 83–84

E

EBFD 83
 Eco-driving (advice) 7
 ECO mode 112
 Economy mode 165
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 83
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 83
 Emergency call 81
 Emergency switching off 103–104
 Emergency warning lamps 80, 177
 Emissions control system, SCR 20, 172
 Energy economy mode 165
 Energy flows 25
 Energy recovery 21, 111

Engine 172
 Engine compartment.....167-168
 Engine, Diesel 156, 168, 177, 201
 Engine, petrol 112, 168, 199
 Engines 198-199, 201
 Environment 7, 32, 59
 ESC (electronic stability control) 83
 Expanded traffic sign recognition 121-122

F

Fatigue detection 135-136
 Filling the AdBlue® tank 170, 174
 Filling the fuel tank 156-157
 Filter, air 171
 Filter, oil 171
 Filter, particle 170-171
 Filter, passenger compartment 52, 171
 Fitting a wheel 182-184
 Fitting roof bars 166-167
 Fittings, boot 65
 Fittings, interior 60
 Fittings, rear 65
 Flap, charging 158, 161-163
 Flap, fuel filler 156-157
 Flashing indicators 70, 186
 Flat bed (recovery) 196
 Floor, boot, adjustable 66
 Fluid, brake 170
 Fluid, engine coolant 170
 Foglamps, front 68, 75, 186

Foglamps, rear 68
 Folding the rear seats 49-50
 Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 48
 Four-wheel drive (4WD) 113, 166
 Frequency (radio) 233
 Fuel 7, 156
 Fuel consumption 7, 21
 Fuel tank 156-157
 Fusebox, dashboard 188
 Fusebox, engine compartment 188-189
 Fuses 188-189

G

Gauge, fuel 156
 Gearbox, automatic 9, 107-110, 113, 115, 171, 191
 Gearbox, manual 9, 107, 113, 115, 171
 Gear lever, manual gearbox 107
 Gear shift indicator ~
 Gear efficiency indicator 114
 Glove box 60
 G.P.S. 226
 Grab handles 60

H

Hands-free access 35
 Hands-free tailgate 34-36
 Hazard warning lamps 80, 177

Headlamp adjustment 76
 Headlamps, automatic dipping 72-73
 Headlamps, automatic illumination 70-71
 Headlamps, dipped beam 185-186
 Headlamps, halogen 76, 186
 Headlamps, main beam 185-186
 Headlamps, Xenon 186
 Head restraints, front 43
 Head restraints, rear 49-50
 Heating 51, 55, 58-59
 Heating, additional 58-59
 Heating, programmable 26, 58-59
 Hi-Fi system 62
 Hill start assist 113-114
 Histogramme, fuel consumption 25-26
 Horn 81
 Horn for pedestrians 81
 Hybrid 25, 103, 157, 203

I

Ignition 103, 237
 Ignition on 103
 Immobiliser, electronic 102
 Indicator, AdBlue® range 19
 Indicator, coolant temperature 19
 Indicator, engine oil level 18
 Indicators, direction 70, 186
 Inflating tyres 172
 Inflating tyres and accessories
 (using the kit) 179, 181

Infrared camera 71, 119
Instrument panel 9–11, 21–22, 119
Instrument panel, matrix 9
Instrument panels 9
Intelligent Traction Control 85
Internet browser 227, 231
ISOFIX mountings 95

J

Jack 178–179, 181, 234
Jump starting 190

K

Key 27, 31
Key, electronic 28–30
Keyless Entry and Starting 28–29, 102–103
Key not recognised 103–104
Key with remote control 27, 102
Kit, hands-free 213, 235–236
Kit, puncture repair 178–179
Kit, temporary puncture repair 178–179, 181

L

Labels, identification 204
Lamp, boot 67

Lamps, parking 70
Lamps, rear 187
Lams with "Full LED" technology 75–76
Lane assist 125, 129–131, 133
Lane departure warning active 137, 142
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 136–137
Leather (care) 176
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 69, 185, 187
Level, AdBlue® 170
Level, brake fluid 170
Level, Diesel additive 170–171
Level, engine coolant 19, 170
Level, engine oil 18, 169
Levels and checks 168–170
Level, screenwash fluid 77, 170
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 69, 185, 187
Lighting dimmer 22
Lighting, directional 75
Lighting, exterior 68
Lighting, guide-me home 28, 70–71
Lighting, interior 64
Lighting, mood 64
Lighting, welcome 70–71
Loading 166–167
Load reduction mode 165
Locating your vehicle 28
Locking 28–29, 31
Locking from the inside 30
Locking the doors 30
Long objects, transporting 65
Low fuel level 156

M

Maintenance (advice) 158, 175
Maintenance, routine 119, 171
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 118
Map reading lamps 64
Markings, identification 204
Massage function 47
Massage, multi-point 47
Mat 64, 119
Menu 212
Menu, main 24
Menus (audio) 207–208, 219–220
Menu short cuts 24
Messages 237
Messages, quick 237
Mirror, rear view 48
Mirrors, door 47–48, 57, 140–141
Mirror, vanity 60
Misfuel prevention 157
Motor, electric 112, 157, 203
Motorised tailgate 34–36
Mountings, ISOFIX 95

N

Navigation 224–226
Navigation, connected 227–229
Night vision 71
Night Vision 71

O

Obstacle detection	142
Oil change	169
Oil consumption	169
Oil, engine	169
On-board tools	66, 178–179
Opening the bonnet	167–168
Opening the boot	29, 33
Opening the doors	29, 33
Opening the windows	27

P

Pads, brake	172
Paint	176, 204
Paint colour code	204
Parcel shelf, rear	66
Park Assist	148
Parking brake	172
Parking brake, electric	104–106
Parking sensors, audible and visual	142
Parking sensors, front	143
Parking sensors, rear	142
Personalisation	10–11
Plates, identification	204
Player, Apple®	211, 234
Player, USB	210, 234
Port, USB	61, 65, 210, 229, 234
Power	21

Power indicator	21
Pressures, tyres	172, 181
Pre-tensioning seat belts	87
Priming pump	177
Priming the fuel system	177
Profiles	215, 238
Programmable cruise control	124
Protecting children	88, 90–93, 95–96, 99
Puncture	179, 181

R

Radar (warnings)	118
Radio	208–210, 232–233
Radio, digital	
(Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB)	210, 233
Range, AdBlue	19, 170
RDS	209, 233
READY lamp	167
Rear air blower	56
Rear screen, demisting	57
Recharging the battery	191, 193–194
Recirculation, air	55–56
Recovery	195, 197
Recovery of the vehicle	196
Reduction of electrical load	165
Regeneration of the particle filter	171
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation	
detection system	116–117
Reinitialising the remote control	32
Reminder, lighting on	69

Remote control	27–28, 30–31
Removing a wheel	182–183
Removing the mat	64
Replacing bulbs	185, 187
Replacing fuses	188–189
Replacing the air filter	171
Replacing the oil filter	171
Replacing the passenger	
compartment filter	171
Reservoir, screenwash	170
Reset trip	22
Rev counter	9–10
Reversing camera	119, 144–146
Reversing lamps	187
Roof bars	166–167
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	177

S

Safety, children	88, 90–93, 95–96, 99
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel)	171
Screen menu map	212
Screens, very cold conditions	165
Screenwash	77
Screenwash, front	77
Screenwash, rear	77
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction)	20, 172
Seat angle	44
Seat belts	86–87, 92
Seat belts, rear	86
Seats, electric	44–45

Seats, front 43–45
 Seats, heated 46–47
 Seats, rear 49–50, 91
 Selector, gear 107–110
 Sensorial Drive function 47, 51
 Sensors (warnings) 119
 Serial number, vehicle 204
 Service indicator 18, 21
 Servicing 18, 171, 172
 Settings, equipment 24–25
 Settings, system 215, 238
 Sidelamps 69–70, 185–187
 Side parking sensors 143
 Ski flap 65
 Snow chains 116, 166
 Snow screen 165
 Socket, 12 V accessory 61, 66
 Socket, auxiliary 210, 234
 Socket, Jack 234
 Speakers 62
 Speed limiter 121–123
 Speed limit recognition 119–120
 Speedometer 9–10, 119
 Sport mode 112
 Spotlamps, side 71
 Stability control (ESC) 83–84
 Starting a Diesel engine 156
 Starting the engine 103
 Starting the vehicle 102, 107–110
 Starting using another battery 103, 190
 State of charge, battery 25, 158
 Station, radio 208–209, 232–233
 Stay, bonnet 167

Steering mounted controls, audio 206, 219
 Steering wheel, adjustment 47
 Stickers, customising ~
 Stickers, expressive 176
 Stopping the vehicle 102–103, 107–110
 Stop & Start 23, 52, 57,
 114–115, 156, 167, 171, 192
 Storage 60, 63, 65
 Storage box 66
 Storage compartments 60
 Storage wells 65–66
 Storing driving positions 45
 Stowing rings 65
 Sunroof, panoramic 40–41
 Sunshine sensor 52
 Sun visor 60
 Suspension 172
 Suspension with variable
 vibration reduction 111
 Synchronising the remote control 32

T

Tables of engines 199, 201, 203
 Tables of fuses 188–189
 Tailgate 33
 Tank, fuel 156–157
 Technical data 199, 201, 203
 Telephone 62, 213–214, 235–237
 Temperature, coolant 19
 Ticket holder 60
 Time (setting) 23, 216, 239

TMC (Traffic info) 226
 Tool box 66
 Tools 178–179
 Topping-up AdBlue® 174
 Total distance recorder 21
 Touch screen 23, 25, 59
 Towbar 84, 163
 Towed loads 198, 203
 Towing another vehicle 195, 197
 Traction control (ASR) 83–84
 Traffic information (TMC) 226
 Trailer 84, 163
 Trailer stability assist (TSA) 84
 Trajectory control systems 83
 Triangle, warning 177
 Trip computer 22–23
 Trip distance recorder 21
 Tyres 172
 Tyre under-inflation detection 116, 181

U

Under-inflation (detection) 116
 Unlocking 27, 29
 Unlocking from the inside 30
 Unlocking the boot 27, 29
 Unlocking the doors 30
 Unlocking the tailgate 27, 29
 Updating the date 216, 239
 Updating the time 216, 239
 USB 210, 229, 234

V

- Ventilation 51–52, 55, 58–59
- Video 234
- Visibility 57
- Vision, 180° forward 146
- Voice commands 221–224

W

- Warning and indicator lamps 12
- Warning lamp, driver's seat belt
not fastened 87
- Warning lamps 12, 21
- Warning lamp, seat belts 87
- Warnings and indicators 12
- Washing 119
- Washing (advice) 158, 175–176
- Weights 198
- Welcome function 46
- Welcome lighting 28, 71
- Wheel, spare 172, 178–179, 181–182
- Window controls 39
- Windscreen, heated 57
- Windscreen wipers 76, 79
- Wiper blades (changing) 78
- Wiper, rear 77
- Wipers 76, 79
- Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 79

The Manufacturer declares, in accordance with the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from the Manufacturer.



DS AUTOMOBILES

SPIRIT OF
AVANT-GARDE

DSautomobiles.com



ANG. 19DS7.0040